

0.120001854

LIGHT HORSE MANUAL.

(AUSTRALIA.)

# LIGHT HORSE MANUAL

FOR THE

## DRILL TRAINING AND EXERCISE

OF THE

## LIGHT HORSE REGIMENTS

OF

## A U S T R A L I A .

---

1st JANUARY, 1910.

---

**By Authority:**

J. KEMP, GOVERNMENT PRINTER, MELBOURNE.

C.11182.—PRICE, 1s.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Principles of Training . . . . .	4
Definitions . . . . .	6
Signals . . . . .	8
Commands . . . . .	11
Intervals and Distances, Table of . . . . .	12
Squad Drill { with intervals . . . . .	13
{ in single rank . . . . .	24
Rifle Exercises . . . . .	30
Swords—Drawing, Returning, and Saluting . . . . .	37
Care of Arms and Musketry Instructions . . . . .	42
Troop Drill, Dismounted . . . . .	67
Fitting Saddlery . . . . .	74
Riding Instructions . . . . .	75
Stable Duties . . . . .	84
Skirmishing and Dismounted Duty . . . . .	87
Troop Drill, Mounted . . . . .	104
Squadron Drill . . . . .	108
Regimental Drill . . . . .	133
Brigade Drill . . . . .	155
Ceremonial { Guards . . . . .	167
{ Escorts . . . . .	175
{ Marching Past and Parade Movements . . . . .	178
General { Tactical Employment of Light Horse . . . . .	187
{ Information . . . . .	190
{ Protection . . . . .	211
{ Marching . . . . .	242
{ Transport . . . . .	246
{ Pitching Tents . . . . .	254
{ Plan of L.H. Camp . . . . .	256
Instruction in Use of Sword . . . . .	Appendix I.
Instruction in Use of Lance . . . . .	" II.
First Aid to Man . . . . .	" III.
First Aid to Horse . . . . .	" IV.
Plate of Horse . . . . .	" V.

This Manual is issued by direction of the Military Board for the guidance of all concerned.

T. GRIFFITHS,















Secretary Military Board.

Melbourne, 1st January, 1910.

---

KEY TO PLATES.

---

	BRIGADIER.		REGT. SERGT.-MAJOR.
	BRIGADE MAJOR.		SQDN. SERGT.-MAJOR
	REGIMENTAL LEADER.		SQDN. Q.M. SERGT.
	2ND IN COMMAND.		FARRIER SERGEANT.
	ADJUTANT.		TROOP SERGEANT.
	SQUADRON LEADER.		TRUMPETER.
	TROOP LEADER		SINGLE FILES.

## PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING.

1. The object of all Light Horse Training is the preparation of leaders, men, and horses for war, and this must be kept in view in every detail of the instruction.

The training must be progressive, men and horses being prepared with the view of taking their places in the troop, and finally in the squadron.

The well-trained squadron is the unit on which all employment of Light Horse in larger bodies is based.

For the efficient discharge of their duties important characteristics to develop in all ranks are intelligence, energy, and individual initiative.

The spirit of enterprise and dash, the system of discipline and loyalty to both leaders and comrades, so essential to the success in war, must be fostered by every means available, until it becomes engrained in every officer and man.

2. Training should embrace horse management, riding, scouting, patrolling, skirmishing, musketry, judging distances, drill, dismounted action, reconnaissance, protection on the move and at rest. Field exercises should be practised on varied ground, including marching, bivouacing, attack and defence, and field firing. Combined operations with the other arms whenever possible should be carried out.

3. The Regimental Commander is responsible for the training and efficiency of his regiment, and for the practical and theoretical training of the officers.

4. The Squadron Leader is responsible to his Commanding Officer for the training and efficiency of his squadron. On the thoroughness of the squadron training the efficiency of the regiment and brigade will mainly depend. The Squadron is to be treated as a self-contained unit. The Squadron Leader is responsible for the practical and theoretical training of his Non-Commissioned Officers.

5. The Troop Leader is responsible to the Squadron Leader for the training and efficiency of his troop; emulation and initiative in this should be encouraged by the Squadron Leader, and the Troop Leader in turn will depute a specific permanent charge to each N.C.O. and Section Leader in his troop, for by giving each subordinate leader a definite command, however small, a development of initiative and powers of decision will result.

6. Non-Commissioned Officers and Section Leaders should be expert in care of horses, riding, rifle shooting, judging distance, scouting, drill, and elementary field duties. Those of, and above the rank of sergeant, should fit themselves to impart instruction in troop and squadron drill, and be able to replace the troop leaders whenever necessity arises.

7. The soldier must be encouraged to feel that in perfecting himself as a fighting man, he is preparing, if required, to take his proper part in the defence of his country.

---

## DEFINITIONS.

- Alignment.*—The straight line on which the front of a body of troops is formed, or is to form.
- Base.*—Two points placed a distance apart, to indicate a line by the prolongation of which the proper alignment of a line or the covering of a column is regulated.
- Change of front.*—A new alignment, either meeting or intersecting the former alignment.
- Change of position.*—Moving troops off their own ground, and reforming to the front or flanks on a new alignment.
- Close column.*—Troops or squadrons at one horse's length from one another. (Leaders in line on the right and serrefiles on the left of their respective units.)
- Column.*—Troops on parallel and successive alignments, at a distance from one another equal to their own frontage.
- Column of Half Squadrons.*—Half squadrons on parallel and successive alignments at troop wheeling distance.
- Column of masses.*—Regiments formed in mass, one behind the other, at such a distance that brigade mass can be formed to a flank by each regiment wheeling.
- Covering.*—The act of one or more men, or bodies of men, placing themselves correctly in rear of one another.
- Deployment.*—Formation of line from column.
- Depth.*—Space occupied by a body of troops from front to rear.
- Directing unit.*—The body on which the direction, pace, and alignment of a line, or relative positions of the several parts of a column depend.
- Distance.*—Space between men or bodies of troops from front to rear.
- Dressing.*—Taking up an alignment correctly.

- Echelon*.—A succession of parallel units facing the same direction, each on a flank and to the rear of the unit in front of it.
- Flank*.—Either lateral extremity of a rank, line, or column; also the direction to either hand of a body, at right angles to its front.
- Flank, directing*.—That by which units march or dress.
- Flank, inner*.—That nearer to the point of formation or direction; also that which serves as a pivot when a body is changing its direction.
- Flank, outer*.—That opposite to the inner or directing flank.
- Front*.—In a general sense, the direction towards which a body of troops, or a single man is facing.
- Frontage*.—The extent of ground covered laterally by troops.
- Horse's length and width*.—Length 8 feet, width 3 feet, which includes 3 inches on either side of rider's knee.
- Interval*.—The lateral space between men or units from flank to flank.
- Line*.—Troops formed on the same alignment.
- Line of Masses*.—A line of two or more regiments each formed in mass with deploying interval plus 16 yards between them.
- Mass (Regiment)*.—Line of squadron columns, closed to two horses' lengths interval between squadrons.
- Mass (Brigade)*.—A line of regimental masses closed to 16 yards interval between regiments.
- Pivot fixed*.—The term applied to the pivot, when during the wheel the pivot man turns on his own ground.
- Pivot moving*.—The term applied to the pivot, when during the wheel the pivot man moves on the arc of a circle.
- Rank*.—A line of men side by side.
- Regiment*.—Two, three, or four squadrons (normally four), with regimental head-quarters.
- Section*.—Four men, the No. 1 being the leader.



*Serrefiles.*—Those riding in rear of a troop or squadron.

*Squadron.*—Two, three, or four troops (normally four).

*Squadron column.*—A squadron with its troops in column.

*Troop.*—One of the subdivisions of a squadron.

*Wheeling.*—A movement by which a body brings forward a flank on a fixed or moving pivot.

### SILENT DRILL.

All movements, except ceremonial, will be practised both by word of command and by signal, a whistle being used to attract attention.

When manœuvres are carried out by signal all ranks will, on the whistle sounding, look towards their leaders until the executive signal is given. In giving signals, face the same way as those to whom the signals are given. Signals should, as far as possible, be seen by all.

Great care is to be exercised to insure ample time being allowed between the sounding of whistle and the making of signal. The larger the unit, the more is the necessity for this emphasized.

Silent drill may be carried out by detailing a unit of direction, to which other units will conform.

### WHISTLE SOUNDS.

*One short blast.*—To draw attention to a signal about to be made.

*One long drawn-out blast.*—To “cease fire.”

*A succession of short blasts.*—To “rally.”

*Two short blasts in quick succession.*—Attention or Sit (or stand) at Ease.

*A succession of alternate long and short blasts.*—To denote “alarm.”

### SIGNALS.

*Action.*—Arm raised as for “Halt,” lowered and hand pointed to ground, bending body well over.

*Advance or Forward.*—Arm, swung from rear to front below the shoulder, finishing with the hand pointing to the front.

*Annul.*—Hand quickly moved across and in front of face, palm to the front.

\**Close.*—Hand placed on top of head, elbow square to the right or left.

NOTE.—In Regimental and Brigade drill in close order, this will mean “Regimental or Brigade mass,” respectively.

*Decrease to next less frontage from Troop Frontage down to Single File.*—Closed hand extended horizontally in line with shoulder to full extent of arm, then doubled back to shoulder by bending but without lowering elbow; movement to be repeated smartly a few times without pause; to indicate from which flank troop frontage is to be decreased, finish by pointing to such flank.

*Dismount or lie down.*—Open hand (palm down) moved up and down below the knee, downward movement to be emphasized.

*Double or trot.*—Clenched hand moved up and down between thigh and shoulder.

*Enemy in sight in small numbers.*—Weapon held horizontally over head.

*Enemy in sight in large numbers.*—Weapon raised and lowered horizontally over head.

†*Extend.*—Arm at full extent over head and waved a few times slowly from side to side, hand open, bringing the hand down at each wave on a level with the shoulder.

\* This denotes “close on the centre,” if required to close on the right or left finish pointing in that direction.

† This denotes “extension from the centre,” if required to be made to the right or left finish by pointing in that direction. The number of paces to be communicated verbally unless the normal extension is required.

*Gallop.*—Circular movement of extended arm from the shoulder from rear to front (three or four times vertically).

*Halt.*—Arm perpendicular at full extent above head.

*Head of Column change direction.*—Arm raised as for "Halt," and without pausing brought in line with shoulder and a horizontal circular movement made, corresponding with the direction of the wheel, and at the same time *circling* the body or horse, and finishing by pointing hand in required direction.

*Horse call.*—Head dress waved above the head. This will precede all signals affecting the led horses.

*Incline.*—Body or horse turned, and arm extended in a line with the shoulder in the required direction.

*Increase to next greater frontage up to Troop Frontage.*—Closed hand raised to full extent of arm above head and lowered to shoulder by bending elbow; this movement to be repeated a few times smartly without pause. To indicate if troop is to form on right, finish by pointing towards such flank.

*Line of Squadron Columns or Squadron Column from any formation.*—Right arm waved horizontally in line with shoulder from right to left and back again as if cutting with a sword, finishing with the delivery of a point to the right front.

**NOTE.**—If this signal is given when in Squadron column or Line of Squadron Columns it means to form Line.

*Mount or rise.*—Open hand (palm up) moved up and down below the knee, upward movement to be emphasized.

*No enemy in sight.*—Weapon held vertically above head.

*Re-inforce.*—Arm swung from rear to front above the shoulder

*Retire or Sections about.*—Arm circled above the head.

*Sections right or left.*—Head dress held in hand at full extent of arm and level with the shoulder in the required direction

*Troops right or left wheel.*—Circular movement of extended arm horizontally in line with shoulder in the required direction, at the same time circling the body or horse on a moving pivot.

*Walk or Quick time.*—Open hand in line with shoulder, elbow bent, forming a V.

### COMMANDS.

The way commands are given has a great influence on the manner in which the movement ordered will be executed

They should be given sharply or slowly, as the nature of the motion may require, and loudly enough for all to hear; the intonation of the voice, and the emphasis, being of the greatest importance.

Every command is divided into two parts, one a distinct caution, then a short pause, and the executive part consisting of one word or syllable usually given sharply.

A command consisting of one word or syllable must be preceded by a caution as "Squad—Halt!" not "Halt!"

Young officers and N.C.O.'s should be practised in giving words of command under special directions as to time and tone.

If halted, the word "Walk," or "Trot," will precede the command "March" when mounted, and it must be remembered that the abrupt, decisive ending to a command so necessary to make men move smartly on foot, is generally not suitable when mounted, the command then must be drawn out.

When in squadron, troop leaders, as a rule, give no commands; but if it is necessary, they should do so only loudly enough for their own men to hear.

When the troops of a squadron act simultaneously the troop leaders give no commands (as in inclining); but, if they are, for instance, to "Form squadron column from line," then the troop leaders give the necessary commands or signals to their troops, as the case may be, using commands if the drill is not by signal.

Regimental and squadron leaders must ride in such a position to hear the commands or see the signals, and they are responsible for passing them correctly on to those next or behind them.

Commands and signals should be given from such a position that they can be easily heard or quickly seen.

INTERVALS.		Mounted.*	On Foot.
<i>In line</i> .. ..	{ Between Men ..	6 inches	$\frac{1}{2}$ arm
	{ " Squadrons	8 yards	8 yards
	{ " Regiments	16 "	16 "
	{ " Brigades..	16 "	16 "
<i>In line of squadron columns</i> .. ..	Between Squadrons	Deploying interval plus 8 yards	
<i>In mass</i> .. ..	{ Between Squadrons	2 horses' lengths	6 paces
	{ " Regiments	16 yards	16 yards
<i>In line of masses</i> . . .	{ Between Squadrons	2 horses' lengths	6 paces
	{ " Regiments	Deploying interval plus 16 yards	
<i>In any line of columns</i>	{ Between Regiments	} Deploying interval plus 16 yards	
	{ " Brigades..		
<i>In sections</i> .. ..	Between Men ..	6 inches	$\frac{1}{2}$ arm
.. <i>ranking past</i>	Between Men ..	1 horse's length	1 pace

\* Measured from knee to knee.

DISTANCES.		Mounted.	On Foot
<i>Line</i> ..	Troop leaders in front and serrefiles in rear of troops	1 horse's length	3 paces
<i>Open column</i> ..	One body to another	Such that a wheel to either hand would bring the bodies into line with the proper intervals	
<i>Brigade column of troops</i> {	One regiment to another		
<i>Column of masses</i> ..	One regiment to another	Frontage of regiment plus 16 yards	
<i>Close column</i> ..	One squadron or troop to another	1 horse's length	3 paces
<i>Column of sections</i> ..	One to another	4 feet	4 paces
.. <i>half sections</i> ..		4 "	2 "
.. <i>single files</i> ..		4 "	1 pace
.. <i>sections</i> ..	One sqdn. to another	4 feet plus 8 yds.	4 paces plus 8 yds.
<i>Ranking past by sections</i> ..	One to another	1 horse's length	4 paces

## SQUAD DRILL.

### S. 1. *Method of Instruction of the Recruit.*

When once the various motions have been learnt, it will be the exception and not the rule, especially with auxiliary forces, to instruct recruits by numbers.

Recruits will, in the first instance, be placed by the instructor without any dressing; when they have learned to dress, as directed in S. 4, they will be taught to fall in, as above described, and then to dress and to correct their intervals. After they have been instructed as far as S. 18, they may fall in as directed in S. 19.

Recruits formed into a squad will be directed to observe the relative places they hold with each other; while resting between the exercises they will be permitted to fall out and move about;

they will be instructed on the words *Fall in* to fall in as they stood at first. This should be constantly practised.

Recruits will be instructed singly as well as together in all exercises as far as S. 18.

Men should be allowed to "stand easy" while details and explanations are being given, and at all times should not be kept at "Attention" longer than is necessary.

### S. 2. *Position of Attention.*

Heels together and in line. Feet turned out at an angle of about 45 degrees. Knees straight. Body erect, and carried evenly over the thighs with the shoulders (which should be level, and square to the front) down and moderately back—this should bring the chest into its natural forward position, without any straining or stiffening. Arms hanging easily from the shoulders as straight as the natural bend of the arm when the muscles are relaxed will allow, but with the hands level with the centre of the thighs. Wrists straight. Palms of the hands turned towards the thighs, and the heel of the hand and the inside of the finger tips lightly touching them, fingers hanging naturally together and slightly bent. Neck erect. Head balanced evenly on the neck, and not poked forward, eyes looking their own height and straight to the front.

The weight of the body should be balanced on both feet, and evenly distributed between the fore part of the feet and the heels.

The breathing must not in any way be restricted, and no part of the body should be either drawn in or pushed out.

The position is one of readiness, but there should be no stiffness or forced unnatural straining to maintain it.

S. 3. *Standing at Ease.*

*Stand at—Ease.* { Keeping the legs straight, carry the left foot about one foot-length to the left so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet, at the same time carry the hands behind the back and place the back of one hand in the palm of the other, grasping it lightly with the fingers and thumb, and allowing the arms to hang easily at their full extent. (It is immaterial which hand grasps the other).

When the recruit falls in for instruction he will be taught to place himself in the position above described.

*Squad,* { On the command *Attention*, spring up to the  
*Atten—tion.* { position described in S. 2.

No deviation from the position of *Stand at Ease* will be permitted unless the command *Stand—easy* is given, when the men will be permitted to move their limbs, but without quitting their ground, so that on coming to *Attention* there will be no loss of dressing. Although when standing easy the freedom of movement of the limbs should not be restricted, the men should never be allowed to adopt slouching attitudes which would tend to counteract the value of the exercises employed in their training.

When there is no special reason for ordering *Stand at Ease* before *Stand—easy*, the order to *Stand—easy* will be given without it. On the caution *Squad* being given to men standing easy, every soldier will at once assume the position of standing at ease.



S. 4. *Dressing a squad with intervals.*

*Eyes*  
*Right—*  
*Dress.*

On the word *Dress*, each recruit, except the right-hand man, will turn his head and eyes to the right and will then extend his right arm, back of the hand upwards, finger tips touching the shoulder of the man on his right. At the same time he will take up his dressing in line by moving, with short quick steps, till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him. Care must be taken that he carries his body backward or forward with the feet, keeping his shoulders perfectly square in their original position.

*Eyes—*  
*Front.* { On the word *Front*, the head and eyes will be turned smartly to the front, the arm dropped, and the position of *Attention*, as described in S. 2, resumed.

A line will similarly be dressed by the left.

S. 5. *Turnings.*

*Turning*  
*to the*  
*Right—*  
*One.*

Keeping both knees straight and the body erect, turn to the right on the right heel and left toe, raising the left heel and right toe in doing so.

On the completion of this preliminary movement, the right foot must be flat on the ground and the left heel raised, both knees straight and the weight of the body, which must be erect, on the right foot.

*Two.*

Bring the left heel smartly up to the right without stamping the foot on the ground.

*Right—*  
*Turn.*

Turn smartly as above, observing the two distinct movements.

*Turning to*  
*the Left—*  
*One.*

Turn to the left, as above, on the left heel and right toe, the weight of the body being on the left foot on the completion of the movement.

- Two.* { Bring the right heel smartly up to the left without stamping the foot on the ground.
- Left—Turn.* { Turn smartly to the left, as above, observing the two distinct movements.
- Turning About—One.* { Turn fully about to the right, as described for the *Right Turn*, by numbers or judging the time as required.
- Two.* {
- About—Turn.* {
- Half Right (Left)—Turn.* { As above described, but turning half right or left.

### S. 6. *Saluting.*

#### (a) *Saluting to the front.*

Caution.—*Salute, by numbers.*

- One.* { On the word *One*, bring the right hand smartly, with a circular motion, to the edge of the head dress, palm to the front, fingers extended, point of the forefinger above the right eye, thumb close to the forefinger; elbow in line, and nearly square, with the shoulder.
- Two.* { On the word *Two*, cut away the arm smartly to the side.

Caution.—*Salute, judging the time.*

- Salute.* { On the command *Salute*, go through the motions as in *One*, and after a pause, equal to two paces in quick time, cut away the arm as in *Two*.

*(b) Saluting to the Side.*

Caution.—*Right (or Left) hand salute.*

The procedure will be as described in (a), except that as the hand is brought to the salute, the head will be turned towards the person saluted.

The salute by N.C.O.'s and men will always be with the hand further from the person saluted, except when swords are worn; on such occasions the salute will be made with the right hand.

The right hand is always used by officers in saluting.

Recruits should be practised in marching two or three together, saluting points being placed on either side. When several men are together, the man nearest to the point will give the time.

When a soldier passes an officer he will salute on the third pace before reaching him, and will lower the hand on the third pace after passing him; if carrying a cane he will place it smartly under the disengaged arm, cutting away the hand before saluting.

A soldier, if sitting when an officer approaches, will rise, stand at attention, and salute; if two or more men are sitting or standing about, the senior non-commissioned officer or oldest soldier will call the whole to *Attention* and alone will salute.

When a soldier addresses an officer, he will halt two paces from him, and salute as in (a). He will also salute before withdrawing.

When appearing before an officer in a room, he will salute without removing his head dress.

A soldier, without his cap, or when carrying anything that prevents him from saluting, will, if standing still, come to attention as an officer passes; if walking, he will turn his head smartly towards the officer in passing him.

A soldier, when riding a bicycle, will turn his head smartly towards an officer in passing him.

### MARCHING.

#### S. 7. *Length of pace, and time.*

1. *Length of pace.*—In *slow and quick time* the length of a pace is 30 inches. In *stepping out*, it is 33 inches, in *double time*, 40, in *stepping short*, 21, and in the *side step*, 15.

2. *Time.*—In *slow time*, 75 paces are taken in a minute. In *quick time*, 120 paces, equal to 100 yards in a minute, or 3 miles 720 yards in an hour. In *double time*, 180 paces, equal to 200 yards a minute. The time of the *side step* is the same as for the *quick step*.

Distances of 100 and 200 yards will be marked on the drill ground, and non-commissioned officers and men practised in keeping correct time, and length of pace.

Marching in *slow time* will be practised only when required for ceremonial purposes.

#### S. 8. *Position in marching.*

In marching, the soldier must maintain the position of the head and body at *Attention*. He must be well balanced on his limbs. In *slow time* the toes must be pointed downwards and

the arms and hands must be kept steady by the side, care being taken that the hand does not partake of the movement of the leg. In quick time the arms must not be stiffened but should swing naturally from the shoulder, the right arm swinging forward with the left leg, and the left arm with the right leg. The movement of the leg must spring from the haunch, and be free and natural.

The legs should be swung forward alternately, freely and naturally from the hip joints, each leg as it swings forward being bent sufficiently at the knee to enable the foot to clear the ground. The foot should be carried straight to the front, and, without being drawn back, placed firmly upon the ground with the knee straight, but so as not to jerk the body.

Although several recruits may be drilled together in a squad with intervals, they must act independently, precisely as if they were being instructed singly. They will thus learn to march in a straight line, and to take a correct pace, both as regards length and time, without reference to the other men of the squad.

Before the squad is put in motion, the instructor will take care that the men are square individually and in correct line with each other. Each recruit must be taught to take a point straight to his front, by fixing his eyes upon some distant object, and then observing some nearer point in the same straight line, such as a stone, tuft of grass, or other object.

### S. 9. *The Quick March.*

*Quick—*  
*March.* { On the word *March* the squad will step off together with the left foot, in quick time, observing the rules in S. 8.

S. 10. *Stepping out.*

Step—  
Out. { When marching, on the word *Out*, the moving foot will complete its pace, and the soldier will lengthen the pace by 3 inches, leaning forward a little, but without altering the cadence.

This step is used when a slight increase of speed, without an alteration of cadence, is required; on the command *Quick—March* the usual pace will be resumed.

S. 11. *Stepping short.*

Step—  
Short. { On the word *Short*, the foot advancing will complete its pace, after which each soldier will shorten the pace by 9 inches until the command *Quick—March* is given, when the quick step will be resumed.

S. 12. *The Halt.*

quad  
—Halt. { The command *Halt* will be given as one or other foot comes to the ground, the moving foot will complete its pace, and the other will be brought smartly up in line with it, without stamping.

S. 13. *Marking time.*

Mark-  
Time { On the word *Time* the advancing foot will finish its pace, the time will then be continued without advancing, by raising each foot alternately about 6 inches from the ground, and keeping them almost parallel to the ground, knees raised to the front, arms and body steady.

On the command *For—ward* the former pace will be resumed. At the halt the command is *Quick Mark—Time*.

S. 14. *Stepping back.*

Not more than four paces are to be taken at a time.

Step  
—March. { *Paces Back* { On the word *March* a pace (or paces) of 30 inches will be taken straight to the rear with the left foot, keeping the shoulders square and body erect.

In halting, the foot in front is brought back in line with the other.

S. 15. *Changing Step.*

*Change—*  
*Step.* { On the word *Step* the advancing foot will finish its pace and the ball of the rear foot will then be brought up to the heel of the advanced one which will make another step forward, thus taking two successive steps with the same foot.

To change step in *Marking Time* two beats are taken with the same foot.

S. 16. *The Double March.*

*Double—*  
*March.* { Step off with the left foot and double on the toe with easy swinging strides, inclining the body slightly forward but maintaining its correct carriage. The feet must be picked up cleanly from the ground at each pace and the thigh, knee, and ankle joints must all work freely and without stiffness. The whole body should be carried forward by a thrust from the rear foot without unnecessary effort, and the heels must not be raised towards the seat but the foot carried straight to the front and the toes placed lightly on the ground. The arms should swing easily from the shoulders and should be bent at the elbow, the forearm forming an angle of about 135 degrees with the upper arm (*i.e.*, midway between a straight arm and a right angle at the elbow), fists clenched, backs of the hands outward, and the arms swung sufficiently clear of the body to allow of full freedom for the chest. The shoulders should be kept steady and square to the front and the head erect.

*Squad—Halt.* { As in S. 12, at the same time dropping and partly opening the hands.

The recruit will be taught to mark time in double time, the arms and hands being carried as when marching in double time, but with the swing of the arms reduced. From the halt, the word of command will be *Double, Mark—Time*.

### S. 17. *The Side Step.*

*Right (or Left) Close—*  
*March; or*  
*... Paces,*  
*Right (or*  
*Left) Close,*  
*—March.*

On the word *March*, each man will carry his right foot 15 inches direct to the right, and instantly close his left foot to it, thus completing the pace; he will proceed to take the next pace in the same manner. Shoulders to be kept square, knees straight, unless on rough or broken ground. The direction must be kept in a straight line to the flank.

*Squad*  
*—Halt.*

On the command *Halt*, which will be given when the number of paces has not been specified, the men will complete the pace they are taking, and remain steady.

Soldiers should not usually be moved to a flank by the side step more than twelve paces.

### S. 18. *Turning when on the march.*

*Right—*  
*Turn.*

1. *Turning to the right, and back into squad.*—On the word *Turn*, which should be given as the left foot is coming to the ground, each soldier will turn in the named direction, and move on at once, without checking his pace.

*Left—*  
*Turn.*

On the word *Turn*, which should be given as the right foot is coming to the ground, each soldier will turn again to the left, and move on without checking his pace.



2. A soldier will always turn to the right on the left foot and to the left on the right foot. If the word *Turn* is not given as the proper foot is coming to the ground, the soldier will move on one pace and then turn.

3. *Making a half turn to the right, or left.*—Recruits will also be practised in making a half turn to the right or left on the command *Right* or *Left—Incline*, and then moving on (without checking their pace) in a diagonal direction, taking up fresh points at once, to march on, and turning in the original direction on the command *Left* or *Right—Incline*.

4. *Turning about.*—On the command *About turn*, recruits will also be taught to turn about, which must be done by each man on his own ground, in three paces, without losing the time. Having completed the turn about, the soldier will at once move forward, the fourth pace being a full one of 30 inches.

### SQUAD DRILL, IN SINGLE RANK.

#### S. 19. *Formation of the squad in single rank.*

At this stage the squad will be formed in single rank, each man being allowed a space of 30 inches.

*Squad—* { The right hand man calls out "one" the next "two,"  
*Number.* { and so on, in a loud, even tone, each man (except the  
left hand man) turning his head in succession as he  
calls and passes the number to the man on his left,  
and at once turning it again to the front.

*Odd Numbers,* } When a squad in single rank is required to drill  
*Two Paces* } with intervals, the instructor will direct the odd  
*Forward—* } numbers to take two paces forward.  
*March.* }

NOTE.—All instruction by numbers is done in a squad with intervals, and when the squad is in single rank the movements are performed judging the time.

*Reform Single Rank—March.* } To re-form single rank the odd numbers will step back two paces, when the squad will correct the dressing from the right or left.

S. 20. *Dressing by a Flank.*

To be used only for inspection purposes, and when halted.

*Eyes Right Dress.* } On the word "Dress," the head will be turned, and eyes directed to the right (except the right hand man). Each man will then take up his dressing in line by moving backwards or forwards at "attention," with short, quick steps, until he is able to see the lower part of the face of the second man from him, at the same time raising the right or disengaged arm and placing the open hand on the hip, fingers to the front, thumb in rear, elbow square with the body. This is termed the half-arm interval.

*Eyes—Front.* } On this command the head and eyes will be turned to the front and arm dropped to the side.

S. 21. *Turnings.*

The recruit will next practice in single rank, judging the time, without any pause between the motions, the turnings he has been taught by numbers.

S. 22. *Marching in Squad.*

Before a squad is ordered to march, the directing flank or man must be indicated by the caution, *By the right, By the left, By No.* — During the march, the shoulders must be kept perfectly square to the front, the body steady, eyes off the ground. Each man will preserve his position in the general alignment by an occasional glance towards the directing man. The squad will first be taught to march straight to the front, by the right, by the left, or by any man. It will then be practised in all the varieties of step in quick time, and in marking time, after which it will be exercised in double time.

The recruit will be practised in changing the pace, without halting, from quick to double, on the command *Double—March*, and from double to quick. In breaking from double into quick time, on the command *Quick—March*, the arms will be dropped to their usual position.

The instructor will insure that the recruit on the flank, of the named number, according to the caution, selects two distant points to march on, and before approaching the first takes another in advance on the same line, and so on. By occasionally remaining halted in rear of the directing man, and fixing his eyes on the distant objects, the instructor can ascertain if the squad is marching in the original direction.

When a soldier finds himself a little behind, or before, the other men of his squad, he must be taught to recover his place in the rank gradually, and not to rush to it.

### S. 23. *The Diagonal March.*

*Right—  
Incline.* { When the squad is on the march in line, and is required to move in a diagonal direction to the right, the command *Right—Incline* will be given, upon which the men will turn half right, and move diagonally in that direction, each regulating his pace so that his own shoulders are parallel with the shoulders of the man on his right. This man's head should conceal the heads of the other men towards the right. The right-hand man will direct, and must therefore pay particular attention to the direction and pace.

*Left—  
Incline.* { When it is intended to resume the original direction, the command *Left—Incline* will be given, upon which every man will move forward in the original direction without checking his pace.

The diagonal march may, if necessary, be taught from the ha-

If the diagonal march has been properly performed, the squad when halted, or after the command *Left—Incline*, will be found to be in a line parallel to its original position. The diagonal march will also be practised in double time.

### S. 24. *Wheeling in Line.*

Wheels from the *Halt* or in *Quick March* are made on a fixed pivot.

Changes of direction in column and wheels at the double are made on a moving pivot.

Recruits will be first taught to wheel from the *Halt*, and then while on the march, the flank brought forward is termed the outer and the other the inner, or pivot, flank.

*Right Wheel (caution) Quick—March.* { *From the Halt.*—On the word *March* the inner flank man marks time, turns gradually with his rank, and looks outwards, the remainder feeling inwards and dressing outwards step off together, the outer flank man looking inwards regulates the pace and conducts the flank so as to avoid crowding, the others step according to their position from the outer flank, resisting pressure from the outer, and giving way to pressure from the inner flank.

*Squad—Halt.* { On this command, which may be given at any period of the wheel, the men will halt and look to the front.

If the command "Halt" or "Forward" is not given before the squad has wheeled a quarter circle, it will move forward in the new direction on completion of the quarter circle, unless then ordered to halt, or to continue the wheel, or unless the command to wheel has been preceded by the caution "To the halt." The

wheel may be carried beyond a quarter circle by the command "Continue the wheel," in which case the squad will receive the command "Forward" or "Halt" when the required angle has been reached.

*Right—*  
*Wheel.* { *On the March.*—On the word *Wheel* the men will wheel a quarter-circle to the right, and then go forward in the new direction.

### S. 25. *Marching as in file.*

*Right—*  
*Turn.* { 1. *From the halt.*—Soldiers, when standing as in file must be instructed to cover each other exactly. The head of the man, immediately in front of each soldier, when he is correctly covered, will conceal the heads of all the others before him.

*Quick—*  
*March.* { On the word *March*, the whole will step off together, and will continue to step a full pace, without increasing or diminishing the distance between each other. No looking down, nor leaning back is to be allowed. The leader is to be directed to march straight forward on some distant object, the remainder of the men covering correctly during the march.

*Squad,*  
*Halt,*  
*Left—*  
*Turn.* { On the commands *Halt, Left (or Right) Turn*, the soldiers will halt, and turn in the required direction. If the marching has been properly performed, the dressing will be found correct.

*Right—*  
*Turn.* { 2. *On the march.*—On the word *Turn*, the soldiers will turn to the right, and move on as in file.

*Left—*  
*Turn.* { On the command *Left (or Right) Turn*, the soldiers will turn in the required direction, and then move on in line.

S. 26. *Changing direction as in file.*right—  
Wheel.

The squad, when marching as in file, will be taught to change direction. The leading man will move round a quarter of the circumference of a circle having a radius of four feet. The other men, in succession, will follow on his footsteps without increasing or diminishing their distances from each other or altering the time, but shortening the pace a little with the inner foot.

If a squad is ordered to halt, mark time, or step short, when part of the men only have wheeled into the new direction the remainder should be instructed to cover off, if required, by the diagonal march, on the command, *Rear Files—Cover.*

S. 27. *Forming Squad.*to the halt.  
Form  
Squad.

On the word *Squad*, the leading man will go forward three paces and halt; the remainder will make a left incline, form in succession on his left and halt, taking up their correct dressing and interval by the right.

If halted the command *Quick—March* is also given.

When done on the move the command is *Form—Squad*, and the leading man goes straight on; the others left incline, double step, and resume the quick march when in line, the direction being at once named, *i.e.*, *By the right* or otherwise.

If desired to form "on the right," the command to "Form Squad" will be preceded by the caution "On the right."

S. 28. *Dismissing a Squad.*Dis—  
miss.

On this command the squad will turn to the right, break off and move away quietly.

## RIFLE EXERCISES.

S. 29. *General Rules.*

1. Recruits, before they commence the Rifle Exercises, are to be taught the names of the different parts of the rifle, and also the care of arms.

2. The rifle must be carefully handled, especially when coming to the *Order*.

3. The exercises must be thoroughly taught and carried out with smartness and precision.

S. 30. *The Order.*

The rifle is held perpendicularly at the right side, butt on the ground, its toe in line with the toe of the right foot, the right arm to be slightly bent, the hand to hold the rifle at or near the band, back of hand to the right, thumb against the thigh, fingers slanting towards the ground.

S. 31. *The Stand at Ease from the Order (with or without Bayonets Fixed).*

*Stand at—Ease.* { Incline the muzzle of the rifle slightly to the front with the right hand, arm close to side, at the same time carry left foot about 1 foot length to the left, keeping left arm steady and both legs straight.

S. 32. *The Attention from Stand at Ease.*

*Attention.*—Close left foot to right and bring rifle to *Order*.

S. 33. *The Slope from the Order.*

*Slope—Arms.* { Give the rifle a cant upwards with the right hand catching it with the left hand at the band, and the right hand at the small of the butt, thumb to the left elbow to the rear.

wo. { Carry the rifle across the body, and place it flat on the left shoulder, magazine outwards from the body. Seize the butt with the left hand, the first two joints of the fingers grasping the outside of the butt, the thumb about one inch above the toe, the upper part of the left arm close to the side, the lower part horizontal, and the heel of the butt in line with the centre of the left thigh.

three. { Cut away the right hand to the side.

S. 34. *The Order from the Slope.*

Order { Bring the rifle down to a perpendicular position  
-Arms { at the left side to the full extent of the arm, at the same time seizing it with the right hand just above the back-sight, arm close to the body.

wo. { Bring the rifle to the right side, seizing it at the same time with the left hand just below the fore-sight, butt just clear of the ground.

three. { Place the butt quietly on the ground, cutting the left hand away to the side.

S. 35. *The Present from the Slope.*

Present { Seize the small with the right hand, arms close to  
-Arms. { body.

wo. { Raise the rifle with the right hand perpendicularly in front of the centre of the body, sling to the left, at the same time place the left hand smartly on the stock, wrist on the magazine, fingers pointing upwards, thumb close to forefinger, point of the thumb in line with the mouth, left elbow close to butt, right elbow and butt close to body.



*Three.* { Bring the rifle down perpendicularly close in front of the centre of the body, guard to the front, holding it lightly at the full extent of right arm, fingers slanting downwards, grasp and support it with the left hand immediately behind the back-sight, thumb pointing to muzzle, at the same time place the hollow of the right foot against the left heel, both knees straight.

S. 36. *The Slope from the Present.*

*Slope—* { Bring the right heel in line with the left, place the  
*Arms.* { rifle on the left shoulder with the right hand, and grasp it as in the second motion *Slope from Order.*

*Two.*—Cut the right hand to the side.

S. 37. *Changing from the Slope.*

*Change* { Seize the butt of the rifle with the right hand  
*—Arms.* { back of the hand up, at the same time slipping the left hand up to the small.

*Two.* { Carry the rifle, turning the magazine outwards, close to the right shoulder, bringing it well to the front so as to clear the head.

*Three.*—Cut the left hand to the side.

S. 38. *Fixing Bayonets.*

S. 39. *Unfixing Bayonets.*To be published  
later.S. 40. *The Trail from the Order.*

Trail—  
Arms. { Raise the rifle by slightly bending the right arm, give it a sharp cant forward by releasing the grasp, seize it at the balance, and bring it at once down to a horizontal position at the full extent of right arm, thumb and fingers round rifle and behind trouser seam.

S. 41. *The Order from the Trail.*

Order—  
Arms. { Raise the muzzle inwards, catch the rifle near the band and come to the Order.

S. 42. *Changing at the Trail.*

Change  
Arms. { Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position, the right hand level with elbow.

Two. { Pass rifle across the body, seize it with left hand at balance, and drop right hand to side.

Three.—Lower rifle horizontally on left side at full extent of arm.

S. 43. *The Slope from the Trail.*

Slope—  
Arms. { Give the rifle a slight cant forward, seizing it with the left hand behind the back-sight, and the right hand at the small of the butt, both arms slightly bent.

Two. { Carry the rifle with the right hand smartly to the left shoulder, seizing it with the left hand as at the slope.

Three.—Cut the right hand smartly to the side.

S. 44. *The Trail from the Slope.*

*Trail—*  
*Arms.* { Bring the rifle down as in the first motion of  
*Order*, seizing it with the right hand at the point  
 balance.

*Two.*—Bring the rifle smartly to the trail.

S. 45. *Short Trail from the Order.*

*Short—*  
*Trail.* { Raise the rifle perpendicularly about 3 inches fr  
 the ground.

This is done when halted, in forming sections, half-sections, or taking any number of paces, forward, backward, or to a flank.

S. 46. *The Secure from the Slope.*

*Secure—*  
*Arms.* { Bring the rifle down to the full extent of the  
 arm, seize it with the right hand in line with  
 shoulder.

*Two.* { Seize the rifle with the left hand, at the balance  
 and turn the magazine to the front.

*Three.* { Give the butt a sharp cant to the rear, place  
 breach under the left arm-pit, knob of bolt to  
 rear, muzzle inclined slightly to the right and down  
 same time cut the right hand to the side.

S. 47. *The Slope from the Secure.*

*Slope—*  
*Arms.* { Bring the rifle to a perpendicular position oppo  
 the left shoulder, and seize the small with the ri  
 hand.

*Two.* { Place the rifle on the left shoulder with the ri  
 hand and seize the butt with the left as before.

*Three.*—Cut the right hand to the side.

S. 48. *Changing at the Secure.*

*Change*  
*—Arms.* { Bring rifle to a perpendicular position, left hand  
 line with elbow.

Two. { Pass rifle across the body, seize it with the right hand at the balance and cut left hand to side.

Three.—Place breech under the right arm-pit.

S. 49. *Slinging Arms.*

Slinging—  
Arms. { Pass the head and right arm between the sling and rifle, the sling passing over the left shoulder, and the rifle, muzzle upwards, hanging diagonally across the back.

NOTE.—“See S. 110 for unslinging arms, except that the rifle is brought to the order.”

S. 50. *Grounding from the Order.*

Ground  
Arms. { Bend the knees and place the rifle gently on the ground at the right side, magazine to right, muzzle pointing direct to the front, and hand in line with toes as it places rifle on the ground, and rise again immediately.

S. 51. *Taking up Arms.*

Take up  
Arms. { Bend the knees, seize the rifle at the right toe, and come to the *Order* immediately.

S. 52. *Inspecting Arms from the Order.*

For  
spec-  
tion  
Port  
Arms. { Cant the rifle, muzzle leading, with the right hand across the body, guard to the left and downwards, barrel crossing opposite point of left shoulder, at the same time meet it with the left hand behind the back sight, thumb and fingers round the rifle, left wrist opposite left breast, both elbows close to the body. Turn the safety-catch over to the front, open the breech, and grasp the butt with the right hand just behind the bolt, thumb pointing to muzzle.

*Examine* { Come to the loading position, with the rifle so  
 —*Arms.* { clined as to enable the officer to look through the  
 barrel and place the right thumb-nail in front of the  
 bolt.

Each soldier, when the Inspecting Officer has passed the man next to him, will ease springs, order arms, and stand at ease.

#### S. 53. *To Ease Springs.*

*Ease—* { Close the breech, press the trigger, turn the safety  
*Springs.* { catch over to the rear, and return hand to the small

#### S. 54. *Order from the Examine Arms.*

*Order—* { Holding the rifle firmly in the left hand, seize  
 —*Arms.* { with the right at the band.

*Two.* { Close heels, bring rifle to the order, and cut away  
 { left hand.

#### S. 55. *Dismissing with Arms.*

A squad will be ordered to *Slope Arms* before dismissal, and on the command *Dismiss* the men will turn to the right and move away quietly, carrying their rifles at the *Slope*.

#### S. 56. *Paying Compliments with Arms.*

When a soldier, carrying a rifle, passes an Officer, he will *Slope*, and salute by carrying the right hand smartly to the small, forearm horizontal, back of hand to front, fingers extended, three paces before reaching, and cutting the hand away three paces after passing, turning his head towards him as when unarmed. If addressing an officer he will *Slope*, halt two paces in front and salute; if halted, he will turn towards him and stand at the *Order*.

Sentries saluting otherwise than by Presenting Arms will *Slope* and carry right hand to small.

S. 57. *Marching with Arms.*

A squad will be ordered to *Slope—Arms* before marching, and if halted will remain at the *Slope* unless otherwise ordered.

## S. 58. SWORD EXERCISE.

Officers will only *draw swords when ordered*, and upon inspection or ceremonial parades.

## DRAWING AND RETURNING OF SWORDS ATTACHED TO BELTS WITH SLINGS.

S. 59. (a) *On Foot.*

*Stand at Ease.*—Carry the left foot about 10 inches to the left, the sword hanging forward by the slings, the shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground close to the left foot, and just in front of the heel, the palm of the left hand resting on the top of the scabbard.

*Attention.*—Bring the sword upright by the side, the shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground as before, the left arm extended, the hand round the scabbard, thumb in front, fingers in rear; at the same time bring the left foot smartly up in line with the right, and brace both knees.

*Quick March.*—Raise the sword smartly with the left hand at the first pace, without stooping or disturbing the position of the feet, and grasp the scabbard at the point where the sword balances when held at an angle of 45 deg., the fingers round the scabbard, the thumb along the edge,\* the arm fully extended, the hilt touching the back part of the arm.

*Halt.*—Lower the sword to the ground, as in the position of *Attention*.

\* For officers substitute:—and place the forefinger below the lower ring of the scabbard, the thumb and remaining fingers round it.

*Draw Swords.*—The sword is drawn in three motions. Raise the scabbard until the little finger of the left hand is in line with the elbow, grasping the back (for officers' sword upper) ring with the thumb and forefinger, the remaining fingers closed in the hand, the thick part of the forearm against the side; at the same time pass the right hand smartly across the body to the sword knot, place it on the wrist, give it two turns upwards to secure it, and as the handle is grasped draw out the blade until the hand is in line with the elbow, turning the edge to the rear and straightening the left arm in rear of the thigh, the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front. With an extended arm draw the sword slowly from the scabbard edge to the rear, in rear of the left shoulder, and bring it in the *Recover*, that is, with the bar of the hilt in line with the bottom of the chin, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow close to the body; at the same time bring the scabbard upright by the side as at *Attention*. (3) Lower the sword smartly to the *Carry*, that is, with the hand in front of the elbow and little finger in line with it, blade perpendicular, edge to the front.

*Slope Swords.*—Relax the grasp of the last three fingers, and without disturbing the position of the hand, allow the back of the sword to fall lightly on the shoulder, midway between the neck and point of the shoulder.

*Stand at Ease.*—Carry the left foot about 10 inches to the left. Allow the scabbard to fall forward to the full extent of the slings, and place the palm of the left hand on the mouth of the shoe of the scabbard resting on the ground, close to the left foot and just in front of the heel.

*Attention.*—Come smartly to the position of *Attention* as before described, the sword at the slope, the scabbard upright by the left side.

*Carry Swords.*—Resume the grasp of the last three fingers and bring the blade perpendicular, as in the third motion of drawing swords.

*Return Swords.*—The sword is returned in three motions. (1) Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow level with the shoulder, at the same time bringing forward the mouth of the scabbard about 3 inches, grasping the back (for officers' swords, upper) with the thumb and forefinger; then, by a quick turn of the wrist, drop the point in rear of the left shoulder into the scabbard and resume the position at the end of the first motion.

*Draw Swords,* shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion. (2) Let the sword fall smoothly into the scabbard, release the hand from the sword knot by giving it two turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up, and bring the sword to the position of *Attention*. Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

In marching with swords drawn the scabbard is to be raised on the word *March*, and lowered to the ground on the word *At*, in the same manner as described for marching with sword not drawn.

On the march (except when on the passing line in marching past), or when manœuvring, the sword is to be at the *Slope*, both on foot and mounted. When mounted the little finger is to be in rear of the hilt.

When the sword is at the *Carry* mounted, the hilt is to rest on the right thigh, the blade perpendicular, the wrist rounded so as to incline the edge slightly to the left, the grasp of the outer fingers slightly relaxed, the little finger in rear of the hilt.



S. 60. (b) *Mounted.*

*Draw Swords.*—(1) Pass the right hand smartly across the body, over the bridle arm, to the sword knot,\* place it on the wrist, give it two turns inwards to secure it, and as the hand is grasped draw out the blade until the hand is in line with the elbow, turning the edge to the rear, the right arm close to the body, shoulders square to the front. (2) With an extended arm draw the sword slowly from the scabbard, edge to the rear in rear of the left shoulder, and bring it to the *Recover*, that is, with the bar of the hilt in line with the bottom of the chest, blade perpendicular, edge to the left, elbow close to the body. (3) Lower the sword smartly to the *Carry*, that is, with the hilt resting on the thigh, blade perpendicular, edge slightly inclined to the left, the grasp of the lower fingers slightly relaxed, little finger in rear of the hilt, arm close to the body, that part of the arm between the wrist and the elbow lightly touching the hip.

*Slope Swords.*—Bring the lower part of the arm at right angles to the upper, hand in front of the elbow, relax the grasp of the second and third fingers, and allow the sword to fall lightly to the shoulder, midway between the neck and point of the shoulder, the little finger still in rear of the hilt.

*Sit at Ease.*—Keeping the sword at the slope, place the hilt on the front part of the saddle, with the right hand over the left.

*Attention.*—Come smartly to the position of *Slope Swords*.

*Carry Swords.*—Resume the grasp of the second and third fingers and bring the blade perpendicular, the hilt resting on the thigh, as in the third motion of drawing swords.

\* When the sword is attached to the saddle, it may be necessary to draw the blade so as to rest the hilt on the bridle arm before the sword knot is taken the handle properly grasped.

*Return Swords.*—Carry the hilt smartly to the hollow of the left shoulder, blade perpendicular, edge to the left elbow level with the shoulder; then, by a quick turn of the wrist, drop the hilt in rear of the left shoulder into the scabbard, and resume the position at the end of the first motion in *Draw Swords*, shoulders being kept square to the front throughout this motion.

Let the sword fall smoothly into the scabbard, release the hand from the sword knot by giving it two turns outwards, the right hand remaining across the body in line with the elbow, fingers extended and close together, back of the hand up. (3) Drop the right hand smartly to the side.

When *Draw Swords* is ordered at the walk, the men, after drawing, will remain at the *Carry* until ordered to *Slope*; but if *Draw Swords* is ordered at the trot or gallop, the men will come to the *Slope* after drawing.

When men are dismounted to lead their horses, they will hook swords at once without waiting for an order.

*Proving.*—In proving and telling off with a drawn sword, the sword is brought to the *Carry*, and again sloped on the command *you Were*.

#### 61. DRAWING AND RETURNING OF SWORDS ATTACHED TO SAM BROWN BELTS.

*On Foot or Mounted.*—The same as for belts with slings, except that the edge of the sword is not turned to the rear either *drawing* or *returning*.

#### S. 62. OFFICERS' SALUTE AT THE HALT.

The sword being at the *Carry* :—

(1) Bring the sword to the *Recover*, but with the thumb pointing upwards.

(2) Lower the sword to the front at the full extent of the arm, the point in the direction of the right foot, about 12 inches from

the ground, edge to the left, thumb extended in the direction of the point, hand directly under the shoulder. When mounted the sword should be in line with the knee.

(3) Bring the sword to the *Recover*.

(4) Bring the sword to the *Carry*.

NOTES.—1. The motions are made in quick time.

2. For salute in marching past see S. 308

## CLEANING AND CARE OF THE RIFLE.

### S. 63. *General Instructions.*

1. The outside should be cleaned daily, all parts of the action wiped over with an oily rag, and the bore wiped out with oil flannelette.

2. Before firing, the barrel and chamber will be wiped free from oil.

3. After firing, rifles should be cleaned immediately, to prevent corrosion. If this cannot be thoroughly done at the time they must be wiped out, and cleaned as follows, as soon as possible afterwards :—

*The bore.*—Oil the pull-through gauze, drop the weight from the breech, and pull the gauze through three or four times, then put a piece of dry flannelette (never more than 4 x 6 inches) in the loop near the gauze, and pull it through until the bore is "rag clean"; finally draw a piece of oily flannelette through the bore. The end loop is only intended for withdrawing the pull-through in case of a jam. Only sufficient flannelette should be used to cover the bore, but not to run into the bore. The bore will be cleaned for three days following that on which the rifle has been fired (boiling water and washing soda (6 ozs. to 1 gal.) is an effective cleanser. Pull flannelette, soaked in the solution, through the bore, which should then be dried and oiled.

*The outside and action.*—Clean the bolt with an oil rag, especially the face of the bolt head, the point of the striker, and the extractor; wipe the inside of the body, the magazine entrance, and the exterior of the rifle with an oil rag, and the inside of the magazine with a dry rag. The interior of the bolt should be cleaned by the Armr.-Sergt. Care should be taken to prevent the *browning* being rubbed off the rifle.

4. *Pull-off* is the pressure required to release the nose of the bar from the full bent of the cocking-piece, and, in the short rifle, should not be more than 6, or less than 5 lbs. Defect could be remedied by the Armr.-Sergt. only. The direction of the *pull-off* is slightly upwards, and in using a tester it should be held in a line diagonally across the small of the butt.

5. The main spring should never remain compressed except when the rifle is loaded. Cartridges should only be kept in the magazine when necessary, and failure in the spring to raise the platform is often overcome by tapping the magazine.

6. Bolts are not to be exchanged, as substitution may seriously affect the rifle's accuracy.

7. No portion of the action is to be taken to pieces except by those authorized to do so.

## THE THEORY OF RIFLE FIRE AND ITS PRACTICAL APPLICATION.

### S. 64. *Definitions.*

*Axis of the barrel.*—An imaginary line following the centre of the bore from breech to muzzle.

*Line of fire.*—An indefinite prolongation of the axis of the barrel.

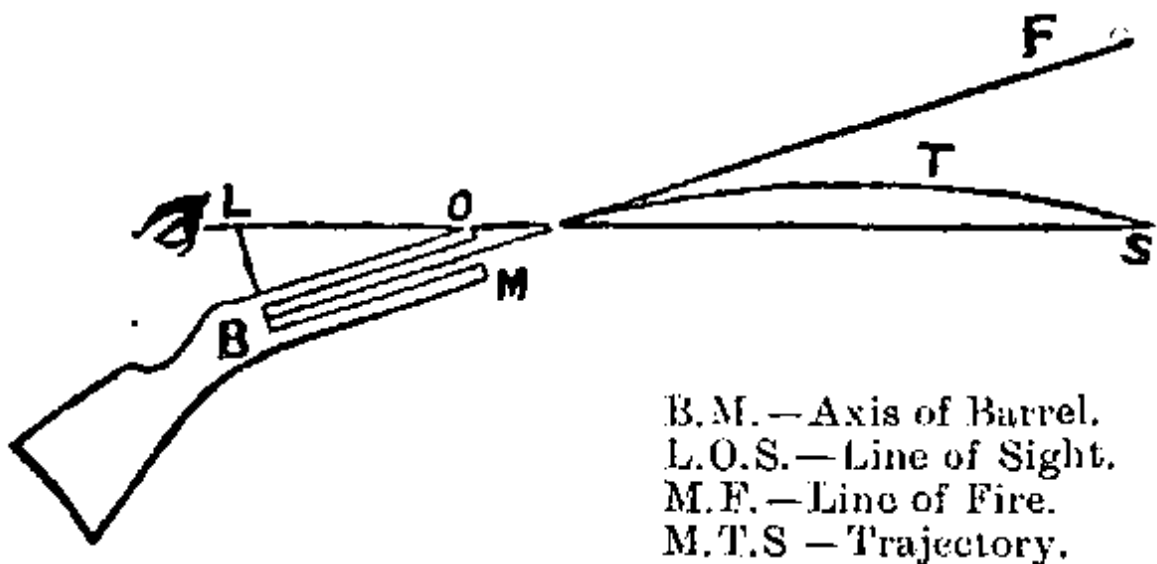
*Line of sight.*—A line from the firer's eye along the sights to the object aimed at.

*Culminating point.*—The greatest height reached by the bullet above the line of sight, and is a point a little beyond half the distance of the whole range.

*First catch.*—That point where the bullet has descended sufficiently to strike the head of a man whether mounted standing, kneeling, lying, &c.

*First graze.*—The point where the bullet first strikes the ground.

*Dangerous space.*—The distance between the first catch and the first graze.



### S. 65. Rifling.

(a) A barrel is said to be rifled when it has spiral grooves in the bore.

(b) Rifling enables an elongated bullet to be used, the advantage being that it has great weight in proportion to the surface directly opposed to the air, and therefore great power in overcoming the resistance of the air, and thus keeping up its velocity.

(c) When the charge is fired, the bullet is forced into and follows the grooves up the barrel, thus leaving the muzzle with rotation on its longer axis, which tends to keep its point foremost to insure accuracy of flight.

### S. 66. *Forces Acting on the Bullet.*

1. Explosion of the charge which drives the bullet forward.
  2. Gravity, which draws it towards the centre of the earth with ever-increasing velocity, immediately it leaves the muzzle.
  3. Resistance of the air, which causes its velocity to decrease.
- The combined effect of these forces causes the bullet to travel in a curved line called the trajectory, which curvature becomes more pronounced the longer the bullet is exposed to their action. Thus a bullet leaving the muzzle of a rifle at the rate of about 1,000 ft. per sec., falls 6 inches below the line of fire in the first 100 yds., which is increased to 2 ft. at 200 yds.

### S. 67. *Short Magazine Lee-Enfield Rifle.*

The following table illustrates the trajectory of the bullet for the ranges given :—

Height of Trajectory (in feet) above Line of Sight.

Range in Yds.	200.	300.	400.	500.	600.	700.	800.	900.	1,000.	1,100.	1,200.	1,300.	1,400.
100	5.4	6.5	6.1	4.1									
200	9.3	12.3	13.9	13.8	11.7	7.2							
300	14.1	19.6	23.6	25.8	26.2	24.1	19.3	11.3					
400	30.6	44.2	56.5	67.0	75.4	81.6	85.0	85.5	82.2	75.2	64.0	48.0	26.8
500	54.1	79.8	104.0	126.0	146.7	164.0	178.7	192.0	201.0	205.0	206.0	202.0	192.0
600	109.5	162.0	214.0	265.0	313.0	359.0	401.0	442.0	478.0	510.0	538.5	561.0	580.0

S. 68. *Range Table.*

(Muzzle Velocity taken at 2,000 feet per second).

Range.	Remaining Velocity.	Time of Flight.	Angles of Descent for last 100 yards of range.	
Yards.	Feet per Second.	Seconds.	°	'
600	1,168	1.196	0	47
800	1,016	1.754	1	23
1,000	925	2.375	2	10
1,500	755	4.188	5	8
2,000	624	6.367	9	44
2,800	456	10.820	21	18

S. 69. *Elevation.*

In order to allow for the fall of the bullet it is necessary to direct the line of fire as much above the object to be hit as the bullet will fall below it if the axis of the barrel of the rifle is pointed at the mark. This raising of the barrel to allow for the curve of the trajectory is termed *giving elevation*.

S. 70. *Sighting of Rifles.*

1. It must be understood that no two rifles behave in an exactly similar manner, and that even if compensation could be made for every error in the sighting of the rifle before issue, wear of parts and loosening of screws, &c., would bring about faults from time to time.

Subsequent alterations in the shooting of the rifle can, as a rule, be compensated by the use of the fine adjustment, which can also be employed for distances intermediate to those marked on the backsight.

2. It is essential that every man should study the shooting of his rifle, and acquaint himself with its variations from the sighting marked on the backsight, at all ranges at which individual

is practised, in order that he may give his rifle the correct elevation for the range.

3. At longer ranges the backsight elevation may be regarded as the best possible guide under all conditions.

### S. 71. *Dangerous Space.*

1. This decreases as the range increases, the reduction being due to the steeper angle at which the bullet descends at the longer ranges.

2. Dangerous space further depends on the—

- (a) Firer's position and consequent height of his rifle above ground.
- (b) Height of the object fired at.
- (c) Flatness of the trajectory.
- (d) Conformation of the ground.

In regard to the—

- (a) Nearer the rifle is to the ground
  - (b) Higher the object fired at
  - (c) Flatter the trajectory
  - (d) More nearly the slope of the ground conforms to the angle at which bullet falls
- } The greater is the dangerous space.

3. A general knowledge of the angle of fall of the bullet in the last 100 yards of its flight, at the shorter ranges, is essential as a guide in deciding when individual fire may be opened with effect. The longer the range the more abruptly does the bullet fall; consequently, the greater the distance the more accurately must the range be ascertained. Hence, the limits of individual fire are to a great extent governed by the curve of the trajectory, and the power of correctly estimating range; and it results that, unless the strike of the bullet can be observed, individual fire cannot be effective on small targets at the longer ranges.



4. The firer must also thoroughly understand how the dangerous space is affected by the factors mentioned in para.

#### S. 72. *Jump.*

1. This name is given to a movement and vibration of the rifle barrel caused by the explosion of the charge, and the passage of the bullet along the spiral grooves of the barrel. This produces a change in the direction of the axis of the barrel between the instant at which the charge explodes and that at which the bullet leaves the bore. In short magazine L.E. rifles the "jump" deflects the bullet both upwards and to the left.

2. Lateral *jump* is compensated for by setting the foresight to the left of the axis of the barrel. The upward *jump* is allowed for in the graduation of the backsight.

#### S. 73. *Drift.*

*Drift* is a term used to express the lateral deviation of the bullet after it has left the barrel. This deviation, which is considerably less than that caused by jump, is brought about by the rotation of the bullet and the position which it assumes in its flight. The left-handed rifling of the service rifle causes the bullet to rotate from right over to left, the point accordingly works over slightly to the left. The consequent increased air pressure on the right side of the bullet therefore forces it to the left. No compensation is made for *drift* in the sighting.

#### S. 74. *The Effects of a Heated or Oily Barrel on Elevation.*

There is a marked tendency for bullets to fall short when the barrel becomes heated; this should be watched, and aim taken accordingly.

As the first round fired from an oily barrel is liable to follow an erratic course, a dry rag should be passed through the bore before practice is commenced.

S. 75. *Extreme Range.*

About 3,760 yards may be taken as the extreme range of a bullet fired from a service rifle.

S. 76. *Wind.*

The chief cause of trouble to the firer is the effect of wind on the bullet. Its direction and strength can be judged by watching trees, grass, flags, &c., by observing the rate of movement of the radiation of heat from the ground ("mirage"), and by personal sensation.

A side wind acts on the greater surface of the bullet and has consequently more influence on its flight than a wind blowing from the front or rear. A front wind retards it, and demands more elevation. A rear wind lessens the resistance of the air, and calls for less elevation. No guiding rules can be framed. Experience and observation alone can teach the necessary allowance to be made for winds of varying strength and direction. But it must be remembered that, owing to the increased time during which the bullet is exposed to its effect, and to the height attained in its flight, the allowance for wind at long range is out of all proportion to that necessary at short range.

S. 77. *Light.*

In bad light the foresight is less distinctly seen than in good light and more of it is unconsciously taken in the line of sight. This naturally affects the elevation used, less being required on a dull than on a bright day.

S. 78. *Ground in Relation to Fire Action.*

1. So important is the influence exercised by the shape of the ground on the grouping of bullets, that it is essential for all officers and N.C.O.'s to possess a knowledge of how its features combine to increase or diminish the probability of fire being effective.

In attack, such knowledge will assist them to direct the fire of their men to the best advantage ; in defence it will aid them to select the best positions for fire action, and will enable them to take steps to minimise their inherent disadvantages.

2. On level ground, the zone beaten by collective rifle fire varies considerably with the range. Its extent is further influenced by the inclination of the ground to the line of sight.

3. When the ground rises in respect of the lines of sight of the rifles, the depth of the area beaten by the bullets is decreased, and is least when the angle between the ground and the trajectory is 90 deg. *E.g.*, when firing at ground rising at 2 deg., 5 deg., and 10 deg., the depth of the beaten zone at 1,500 yards' range is decreased roughly by  $\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , and  $\frac{2}{3}$  respectively.

Since the grouping of the bullets becomes closer as the upward slope of the ground increases, the effect of errors of estimation of range will be more serious, and as the bullets will fall at a steep angle, the dangerous space will be proportionately reduced. On such ground, therefore, troops should be drawn up in shallow formations, but supports and reserves may be nearer the firing line than is normally advisable.

4. When the ground beaten by bullets falls in respect of the line of sight, the depth of the beaten zone is augmented, in proportion as the downward slope increases, until it reaches its greatest magnitude when the angle of the fall of the bullets is the same as the slope of the ground.

In these circumstances, the fire becomes grazing, and the extent of the dangerous space nearly identical with the beaten zone. Therefore, at short ranges, where the trajectories are flat, the depth of the beaten zone will be much increased if the ground behind the object fired at falls at a gentle slope. At long ranges, on the other hand, a greater area will be beaten when ground falls more steeply.

It is, therefore, clear that ground far behind the objective will at times be swept by unaimed fire, and it follows that in such circumstances supports should be in extended order, or in shallow columns on narrow frontages.

5. When the objective is a crest line, the beaten zone is greatest, and part of the fire is grazing, when the ground beyond the crest is parallel, or nearly so, to the trajectory of the bullets.

At short ranges a defiladed zone, or space not swept by fire, occurs, greater or less according to the distance from which fire is delivered, the steepness of the forward slope of the ground, the extent of the hill top, and the inclination of the reverse slope.

It appears, therefore, that when the firing line is placed on the crest of a razor-backed hill with steep reverse slopes; supports and reserves will at all ranges be but little exposed to unaimed fire when posted in its vicinity. In other cases, when the crest of a hill is occupied, the vulnerability of supports and reserves will be least if, when the enemy is at long range, they are withdrawn from, and as he approaches closed on, the firing line.

6. When the bullets fall on level ground, difference of level between the firers and the objective beaten by bullets produces the same effects on the beaten zone as when fire is directed at ground inclined to the line of sight. If the fire is from high on to lower ground, the depth of the beaten zone is diminished, as when firing at rising ground. It follows, therefore, that the distances between the successive lines of an assailant advancing against troops posted on commanding ground may be less than is normally advisable.

If the fire is from low ground on to a higher level, the effect will be the same as in the case of fire on ground falling in respect of the line of sight. When the crest of a plateau is held, supporting troops should, therefore, be withdrawn from the firing line whilst the enemy is at long range.

## MUSKETRY EXERCISES

## INSTRUCTION IN AIMING.

S. 79. *General Rules.*

1. Instruction in aiming will be divided into two stages.

In the preliminary stage the recruit will be taught the method of adjusting the sights to give elevation, and to aim with absolute accuracy at a bull's-eye, placed at such a distance, and of such a size as not to tax his powers. The size of the mark will be diminished and the distance increased as progress is made. He will also be taught to allow for the effect of wind by the use of the wind gauge and by aiming to the right or left of objects as may be necessary.

In the advanced stage natural objects or indistinct targets should be selected.

S. 80. *Methods of Instruction in Aiming.*

1. *1st Stage.*—The instructor will explain to his squad the necessity of strict observance of the following rules:—

(a) The backsight must be kept upright.

(b) Aim must be taken by aligning the sights on to the centre of the lowest part of the mark, the tip of the foresight being in the centre of, and in line with, the shoulders of the V of the backsight.

When these principles have been mastered the instructor will adjust the sights for any given range, and aim from the *rest* at the target, with his eye at a point above and in line with the butt plate. Having aimed, he will call on each individual to observe the correct method of aligning the sights on a mark. Each recruit will then act similarly, when the instructor will verify the aim, point out errors, and explain how they would have affected the accuracy of the shot, and how they are to be avoided.

In aiming with the long range sights a similar procedure will be pursued, but the eye will be placed about 1 inch behind the small of the butt.

2. The most common faults at aiming are—

(a) Taking too much or too little foresight into the V of the backsight.

To emphasize the importance of accuracy in this respect it should be explained that a fine or half sight will cause the bullet to strike about 5 inches and 3 inches lower, respectively, per 100 yards of range, than when the correct sight is taken.

The following method will be found useful to guide a recruit in taking the correct amount of foresight :—Lay the edge of a piece of paper on the upper edge of the backsight cap, when the sight will appear as shown in one of the subjoined diagrams.



Correct.



Too Fine.



Too Full.

(b) Inaccurate centering of the foresight in the notch of the backsight.

The recruit should understand that the consequence of this will be to deflect the muzzle of the rifle to the side on which the line of aim is taken, *e.g.*, if aim be taken over the right edge of the notch, the direction of the line of fire will be to the right of the mark aimed at.

(c) Fixing the eyes on the foresight, and not on the object.

This will result in the sights not being accurately aligned on the mark.

(d) Inclining the backsight to one side.

In this case the bullet will strike low, and to the side on which the sights are inclined.

3. To insure that each man is proficient in aiming, and to clearly bring to his mind the errors arising from any inaccuracies therein, the following procedure will be carried out:—

The rifle will be placed on an aiming rest, and directed at a sheet of blank white paper, affixed to any convenient target placed at a distance of about 10 yards from the rifle. A marker will stand at one side of the target with a small rod bearing a disc of metal or cardboard, painted white, about  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter; on this is a black bull's-eye  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch in diameter, in the centre of which is pierced a hole just large enough to admit the

FRONT



BACK



SIDE



point of a pencil. The disc will be held on the paper, the instructor will align the sights on it as laid down in 1 (b), and its position will be marked with a pencil. Each man in succession will be called up and ordered to look along the sights, but without touching the rifle, and when he has satisfied himself as to the correctness of the aim, the disc will be removed. It will then be replaced on the paper and moved at his direction, until its lower

edge is brought into the line of sight, when its position will be marked. This operation will be repeated three times, and the points thus fixed joined, thereby forming a triangle. The relative position of the points with respect to the instructor's aim\* will demonstrate whether the recruit knows how to align the sights correctly. Their position in regard to one another will show whether he is able to aim consistently with the same sight. If the triangle is formed so that it lies vertically on the



VERTICALLY.



HORIZONTALLY.

paper, it proves that the soldier's principal fault is not consistently taking the same amount of foresight; if horizontally, that the main error is inaccurate centering of the foresight. When one of the sides of the triangle exceeds  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch, the recruit requires further instruction. The aim corrector will also be used to enable the instructor to supervise the soldier's methods and test his progress, the aim being taken from an aiming or firing rest.

4. The use of the wind gauge will be taught to troops armed with the short Lee-Enfield rifle in the following manner:—The instructor, having explained that a variation of one division on the wind gauge scale is equivalent to 6 inches at the target, per 100 yards of range, will question the soldier how many feet

\* If the recruit's aim is below that of the instructor, it shows that he has taken too full a sight; if above, that his sighting has been too fine; if to the right, that the foresight was on the left of a perpendicular drawn through the centre of the notch; if to the left, *vice versa*.



of deviation would be required to allow for the wind which is blowing,\* and then direct him to set his sights to the range, adjust the wind gauge, and aim.

When he has thoroughly mastered the setting of the wind gauge, it will be explained to him that in an unsteady wind he must be prepared to aim off the bull's-eye or figure, *e.g.*, if, with wind gauge set to allow 2 feet 6 inches right wind, at 500 yards, he is on the point of exerting the second pressure on the trigger and the wind suddenly drops, he must move his aim 2 feet 6 inches to the left of the mark if he is to obtain a hit.

His power of making the correct allowance will continually be tested, and when he has aimed, a fatigue man will show by a marking disc the correct point of aim, so that the soldier by looking along his sights, without touching the rifle, may observe his error.

5. *2nd Stage.*—In this stage aim will be chiefly directed at indistinct targets. For this latter purpose a fatigue man will be directed to show himself for a few seconds at different ranges. The squad will then aim from rests at the ground they believe to be occupied. After a short interval the fatigue man will stand up, when errors will be corrected and criticised.

Further exercises of the same nature will subsequently be carried out without the use of rests, with a view to cultivating rapidity in aiming, progress being tested by means of the aim-corrector.

6. *Long Range Sights.*—In aiming with the long range sights, the procedure explained in para. 1 will be adopted, but the top

---

\* A ready method of ascertaining the required adjustment is to multiply the number of feet, or fractions of feet, of allowance for wind, by 2, and divide the product by the number of hundreds of yards in the range. The result will be the number of divisions which the wind gauge must be moved.

of the head of the dial sight will be seen in the centre of the aperture. Exercises in these will be chiefly confined to aiming at natural objects and areas of ground.

### INSTRUCTIONS IN FIRING.

#### S. 81. *General Rules for Firing.*

1. Skill in shooting is entirely dependent on careful individual instruction before the soldier is taken to the range. The lessons which target practice is intended to afford will be of little value unless a recruit is proficient in aiming, expert in the handling of his rifle in all positions, and has overcome the difficulties of releasing the trigger without disturbing the aim.

2. The following motions must be performed :—

(a) Load.

(b) Adjust the backsight, or long range sights.

(c) Aim.

(d) Press the trigger.

The motions will be carried out by the trained soldier on the command—(Standing, lying, kneeling, sitting); *At* (object); *At* (distance); *Fire* (or *Rapid fire*).

3. The recruit, on the other hand, will receive individual instruction in each separate motion, and will not be permitted to undertake the succeeding motions until he has thoroughly mastered those which precede them.

4. In the early part of the training the instructor, having assembled his squad around him, and directed the men to order arms, or rest, will explain the circumstances in which the position to form the subject of instruction (*i.e.*, standing, kneeling, sitting, lying) would be adopted on service, and whilst demonstrating the correct method of performing each motion will point out clearly its use.

The men will then be directed to carry out the motions without regard to cadence, and the instructor will occupy himself in correcting the faults committed by each man in his squad, for which purpose he should stand five or six paces from him and to his right front. Simultaneous action is not to be attempted, nor will the regulation position be insisted on if unsuited to the soldier's build. The object of the instructor is that each individual shall be taught to perform the necessary motions with ease and accuracy, whilst adhering to the regulation positions as closely as possible.

5. The firing rest will be frequently employed in early instruction to enable the recruit to support the rifle and rest his muscles, whilst the instructor modifies, or corrects his position. An incorrect position, however, usually arises from want of accuracy in the preliminary actions which lead to it, and it is to these that attention must be given, for a faulty position once acquired cannot easily be corrected.

6. As progress is made the squads will be practised in combining any or all of the motions which have formed the subject of separate consideration, special care being taken that there is no falling off in the accuracy with which they are performed.

7. The instructor will now train the soldier to combine complete ease in handling the rifle and from varied classes of cover, with the greatest rapidity of aim consistent with accuracy.

8. In the earlier stages figure targets will be found suitable. Natural objects will also be selected as targets, with a view to accustoming the men to fire at the class of target which is usually afforded on active service. Exercises at moving, vanishing, and advancing targets should also frequently take place.

9. On the signal, or command, *Cease Fire*, the soldier will close the breech, bring the rifle to the loading position, turn the safety catch completely over to the rear, and await orders.

10. On the command *Rest* the men will turn over the safety catch and assume any easy position.

### S. 82. *Firing Standing.*

1. The standing position will as a rule be used to fire from breastworks, high walls, and cover, such as long grass or standing corn, or to take a snap shot, when advancing, at an enemy who suddenly appears.

2. *To Load.*—Turn half-right and carry the left foot to the left and forwards, so that the body is equally balanced on both feet. Bring the rifle to the right side just above the hip, with the muzzle pointing upwards, small of the butt just in front of the hip, grasping the stock with the left hand immediately in front of the magazine. Turn the safety catch completely over to the front with the thumb or forefinger of the right hand, seize the knob with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand, turn it sharply upwards, and draw back the bolt to its full extent. Take a charger between the thumb and first two fingers of the right hand and place it vertically in the guides. Then, placing the ball of the thumb immediately in front of the charger, force the cartridges down with a firm and continuous pressure until the top cartridge has engaged in the magazine.\* Remove the charger. Force the bolt sharply home, turning the knob well down, and with the thumb or forefinger of the right hand turn the safety catch completely over to the rear. Then seize the rifle with the right hand in front of the left, bring the left foot back to the right, turn to the front, and order arms.

---

\* The magazine will hold two chargers of five cartridges each, but should, in ordinary circumstances, be loaded with one only, as the soldier will thus retain the power of adding another charger, at any time, should necessity demand. If when on the line of march, it is desired to charge the magazine without loading the rifle, the top cartridge may be pressed downwards with the thumb so as to permit the bolt to slide over the cartridge as the breech is closed.

3. *To Unload.*—As when loading; then turn the safety catch completely over to the front. Raise and draw back the bolt; and without turning the knob down, work the bolt rapidly backwards and forwards until the cartridges are removed from the magazine and chamber, allowing them to fall on the ground. Then close the breech, press the trigger, turn the safety catch completely over to the rear, lower the leaf of the backsight and by pressing the bone studs inwards draw the slide back as far as possible; or lower the long range sights by putting down the aperture sight and turning the bead of the pointer on to its bed, and order arms.

4. *To Adjust the Backsight.*—Bring the rifle to the loading position and hold it so that the lines on the backsight can be clearly seen. Press in the bone studs on either side of the slide with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand, move the slide until the line is even with the place on the leaf giving the elevation for the distance named, and see that it is firmly fixed.\* Lower the leaf of the backsight, and order arms.

5. *To Adjust the Long Range Sights.*—Bring the rifle to the loading position, and hold it so that the dial can be clearly seen. Move the pointer to the place on the dial giving the elevation for the distance named, and then raise the aperture sight. Lower the aperture sight, move the bead to its bed, and order arms.

6. *To Aim.*—Load, and direct the eye on the mark. Then bring the rifle into the hollow of the right shoulder, press it in with the left hand, grasp the small firmly with the thumb and three fingers of the right hand, place the forefinger round the lower part of the trigger, and exert sufficient pressure to take the first pull; the backsight to be upright, left elbow well under the

\* To ascertain the number of divisions on the fine adjustment which will give the required extra elevation at any range, multiply the number of feet of extra elevation by 2 and divide the product by the number of hundreds of yards in the range.

rifle, right elbow a little lower than and well to the front of the right shoulder. As the rifle touches the shoulder bring the cheek down on the butt, close the left eye, align the sights on the mark, and restrain the breathing. After a pause bring the rifle to the loading position, turn back the safety catch, and order arms.

7. *Pressing the Trigger.*—Load, and aim; then press the trigger by a squeezing motion of the forefinger and thumb without any movement of the hand, eye, or arm, until the spring is released. Bring the rifle to the position for loading and load; or turn the safety catch to the rear, and order arms.

Before the soldier is permitted to press the trigger, the method of doing so will be explained to him as follows:—

The instructor, after placing the rifle on two sandbags, will show how the trigger is pressed, and explain at the same time:—

- (i) That, as the trigger has a double pull-off, two distinct pressures are necessary to fire the rifle. The first pull should be taken when the rifle has been brought into the position for aiming: the second when the sights are aligned on the mark.
- (ii) That the first joint of the forefinger should be placed round the *lower part* of the trigger. And (iii) that in order not to disturb the aim breathing must be restrained when pressing the trigger.



In order that he may learn from experience the pressure required to release the cocking piece, the soldier will also be directed to place his forefinger under that of the instructor, but without exercising pressure, whilst the instructor carries out the motion. The main object is to release the cocking piece without disturbing the aim.

S. 83. *Firing Lying.*

1. The lying position will generally be adopted by troops on open ground, or when firing from continuous low cover, or from behind small rocks, trees, ant-heaps, &c.

2. *To Load.*—Turn half-right, bring the rifle to the right side as when standing. Place the right hand on the ground, and lie down on the stomach, left arm and rifle resting on the ground in a convenient position, muzzle pointing to the front. Proceed as when standing. Place the right hand on the ground, rise, and order arms.

3. *To Unload.*—Lie down as when loading. Proceed as when standing, then return to the order.

4. *To Adjust Sights.*—Lie down, draw the rifle through the left hand until the lines on the backsights can be clearly seen, and proceed as when standing.

5. *To Aim.*—Lie down, as when loading. Bring the left elbow well forward so that the butt is clear of the shoulder, and proceed as when standing, closing the right elbow towards the left. To obtain elevation, the body must be raised on the elbows and slightly retired.

S. 84. *Firing in Other Positions.*

The recruit will also be instructed to fire—

- (a) Sitting, which is most suitable when on ground falling at a steep slope. In this position the right shoulder should be kept well back, and the left forearm supported by the thigh, the right elbow resting against the right knee.
- (b) Kneeling, used mainly when firing from continuous cover, or where cover is too high for the lying position.

The soldier may kneel on the right knee or on both knees. In the former case the body may be supported on the heel or not, as desired; the left knee will be in advance of the left heel, and the left elbow rest on or over the left knee; the left leg, hand, and arm, and the right shoulder, should be in the same vertical plane when firing in the open. In the latter the body may rest on both heels, or be kept upright to suit the height of the cover, the elbows in both instances being unsupported by the body.

#### S. 85. *Collective Fire.*

When the men have acquired the necessary aptitude in handling the rifle in all positions, the period of individual instruction will be concluded, and they will be trained to combined action on the command of a leader, and, if circumstances demand, to take independent action in furtherance of the leader's purpose.

If orders are not given as to the rate of fire, it will be "slow," about three rounds per minute. "Rapid" fire is the highest rate consistent with reasonable accuracy (about 15 rounds per minute).

Fire can only be effective when intelligently directed, accurately delivered, and carefully controlled.

#### S. 86. *Preliminary Exercises.*

The squad will be placed in line at one or two paces interval, and on the command from the instructor ("Standing," "Sitting," "Kneeling,"); *At* (object); *At* (range); "*Fire*," or "*Rapid Fire*," will perform the necessary motions, and continue firing until the whistle is sounded or the command "*Cease Fire*" or "*Unload*" is given. If no orders are given as to the position the men will lie down.



If it is desired to change front, or alter the position of the men, the objective, range, or rate of fire, the instructor will give the necessary commands, but without, as a rule, causing the men to cease fire. The men will be taught to turn the safety-catch completely over to the rear, before a movement is undertaken.

When the squad has gained sufficient experience it will be taught, when in motion, to halt and deliver fire on the executive word "*Fire*" or "*Rapid Fire*," preceded by the necessary cautions.

- To develop the self-reliance of the men, the complete detail of commands will occasionally be dispensed with. Thus, at an object appearing suddenly for a limited time, the executive command "*Fire*" or "*Rapid Fire*" only will be given, on which they will adopt the position they consider most suitable to the tactical conditions, adjust their sights, and open fire.

### S. 87. *Advanced Exercises.*

Although the principle of complete control by superior commanders must never be lost sight of, subordinate leaders and men will be trained to think and act for themselves in situations where control of fire cannot be exercised, or when fire can be opened with effect though no orders have been received to do so.

As a general rule the senior officer or non-commissioned officer will order fire to be opened, give the range, and issue subsequent directions as to change of objective and range, or rate and cessation of fire, all of which will be passed to those concerned.

Subordinate leaders, in the absence of orders or instructions, will give the necessary directions for the opening and regulation

of fire as necessity demands. The men, in like manner, by the withdrawal of leaders, will be taught to use their own judgment and discretion.

The exercises will be carried out in skirmishing formations, and fire once opened will, if not countermanded, be continued, at each halt, without further orders.

S. 88. *Judging Distance and Estimation of Range by Eye.*

The process of judging distance consists in either (a) measuring the intervening ground with the eye; (b) judging the range from the impression given to the eye by the object; or (c) a combination of the two systems.

It is, therefore, clear that soldiers must be taught first a short unit of measure to be applied to greater distances, and, secondly, the aspect of objects in varying conditions of light, ground, and background. To this end the soldier should be trained to recognise, first, a distance of 100 yards on level ground, and then distances of 200, 300, 400, and 500 yards, which should be marked by posts, flags, dummies, or fatigue men.

*Objects are over-estimated—*

When kneeling or lying.

When both background and object are of a similar colour

On broken ground.

When looking over a valley or undulating ground.

In avenues, long streets, or ravines.

When the object lies in the shade.

When the object is viewed in mist or failing light.

When the object is only partially seen.

When heat is rising from the ground.

*Objects are under-estimated—*

When the sun is behind the observer.

In bright light or clear atmosphere.

When both background and object are of different colours.

When the intervening ground is level or covered with snow.

When looking over water or a deep chasm.

When looking upwards or downwards.

When the object is large.

The next stage of instruction should be to train men to estimate for themselves the distance of objects. This can only be attained by careful individual instruction. No guessing should be permitted, and each man, before he gives the range, should explain clearly the process of reasoning on which he has based his estimate, and shall also state whether he considers that good results could be obtained from fire at the target on which he is judging.

Soldiers should be trained, in combination with visual instruction, first to estimate the range of standing, and then lying dummies, or fatigue men, placed at progressively increasing distances; estimates should be made in service conditions as regards position.

They should then be required to discriminate between the distance of objects situated in different directions. Next, they should estimate the range of vanishing objects, and, finally, of features of the ground which might shelter an enemy.

S. 89. *Estimation of Range by observation of Fire.*

This method is of value when the ground in the vicinity of the objective is of a nature to show the strike of the bullets.

A considerable volume of rapid and concentrated fire is necessary to enable the strike of bullets to be observed, and for

this purpose forty or fifty rifles should be employed. The distance, and nature of the ground, will determine the volume of fire required, but the greater the difficulty of observation the greater must be the volume of fire.

An elevation well under the estimated distance should first be selected, and if the fire can be observed the elevation should be increased by 100 yards at a time until the nucleus of the bullets is seen to fall on the desired spot.

The best position to observe the fire is behind, and, if possible, above the party firing, but in this position it must be remembered that bullets which fall short will be most easily seen, and may be mistaken for the nucleus of the fire, and that all shots will appear to strike nearer the observer than is really the case.

To an observer on or beyond a flank of the party, shots which pass over the mark will appear to fall towards the side on which he is posted, and those which drop short to fall towards the opposite side.

Thus, if the majority of shots seem to an observer on the right flank to fall to the right of the mark, the range has been over-estimated, and, if to the left, under-estimated.

## S. 90. TROOP DRILL DISMOUNTED.

The following should be explained to and understood by all :—

1. The leader is responsible for the dressing, pace, and direction of his troop, and, when in line, should always be in front of it, unless otherwise ordered.

2. The dressing in line is *by the centre*, and preserved by the centre guide keeping three paces behind the leader, and the men keeping in line with the guide by glancing towards the centre.

In column of sections, half-sections, or single files, it is by that flank on which the troop leader is marching, *i.e.*, in sections right it is *By the left*, and in sections left, *By the right*.

3. The intervals between men, except in extended order, is  $\frac{1}{2}$ -arm, and corrected by occasionally raising the arm.

4. The relative positions of sections may be changed during drill, but the men composing a section are kept together. Whenever the four men of a section are abreast, No. 1 will invariably be on the right of the section, No. 2 next, and so on. In half-sections, Nos. 1 and 3 will invariably be on the right of their respective half-sections. In single file, No. 1 will lead, No. 2 next, and so on, and in column of half-sections, Nos. 1 and 2 will lead, except, *e.g.*, when advances by single file or half-sections are made from the left from line, or when moving from line to the left flank by single files or half-sections. In any exceptions, on the command, 'Form sections,' or 'Form half-sections,' the half-sections or files in rear will form up, so that members of sections or half-sections will be in their correct relative positions.

5. If the command *Sections—Right, Left, or About* is given when on the move, the men continue in movement; but, if given when halted, the men halt on completing the wheel. If it is desired when moving to do the movements to the halt, the caution *To the Halt* must be prefixed to the command; for instance, if a column of sections is marching and required to form into line to their left and halt immediately, the command would be, *To the Halt-Sections—Left*.

6. The distances between sections, half-sections, and single files are 4, 2, and 1 paces, and between the troop leader and the centre guide 3 paces.

7. An incomplete section is placed second from the left.

8. A troop in line goes *sections about* when required to move in an opposite direction, and sections, half-sections, or single files *about*, if in column.

9. A troop, when in column of half-sections or single file may be ordered to form troop; but in these cases sections will form (without taking up correct distance between sections) before moving up into the new alignment.

If in column of half sections or single files the sections must first be formed before forming line to a flank.

10. When a formation is made *from* and *to* the halt, or *to the halt* if on the move, the leading body will advance three paces (before halting) after the command is given.

11. All decreases from column of sections or half-sections will be made from the right, and all increases up to sections except as provided in paragraph 4) on the left.

12. In the preliminary instructions, movements should be done from the halt and units placed separately in position.

13. When a troop is in line the flank from which formations are made will be named thus:—*From the right (or left) Form*  
*Halt Sections.*

14. When required to increase front on the march the units in rear will take the next increased pace without word of command, and the former pace as they form, unless the command is *Mark Time in—Front* (if dismounted), when the rear will continue at the pace moving and *Mark time*, on the new alignment, the command *For—ward* is then given to move the troop on.

When required to decrease front on the march, the units affected will mark time (halt or check pace if mounted) without word of command, and fall into their places in rear.

15. All wheels at the trot or gallop are made on a moving pivot. All wheels of a troop from the *Halt* or at a walk are made

on a fixed pivot, except when a column changes direction, in which case the moving pivot is used.

#### 16. Leaders and serrefiles changing.

The troop leader circles round by his right and the serrefiles by their left (that is the right and left before the men go about) and pass the shortest way to their places.

When it is required to fall back for a short distance only with a view of again turning in the original direction, the command, "Sections About" will be preceded by the caution "The troop will retire," and the leader and serrefile will retain their positions. The troop will turn in the original direction on the command, "The troop will advance, Sections—About."

During the retirement the serrefile will be responsible for the leading of the troop. The same principle will be observed in Squadron, Regimental, and Brigade Drill.

#### S. 91. *Formation of the Troop.*

<i>Troop</i>	{	On this command the men "fall in" in line, standing at ease, and the roll is called.
<i>Fall—In</i>		
<i>Attention.</i>	{	The troop leader inspects the men, clothing, arms and equipment.

#### S. 92. *Telling off and proving a Troop.*

*Troop—Number.*—The men number from right to left.

<i>Centre Guide</i> — <i>Prove.</i>	{	The <i>centre</i> man (or the left hand man of the right half of the troop) is <i>named</i> as the centre guide.
		On the word <i>Prove</i> , the named man will extend his right (or disengaged arm) to the full extent to the front, in line with the shoulder, back of hand to the right (or left) thumb close to forefinger, and fingers extended.

*As you Were.* { On the word *were* cut the arm without noise smartly to the side.

*Tell off by—Sections.* { On the word *Sections* the right-hand man will call out *One*, the next man *Two*, next *Three*, next *Four*, next *One*, then *Two*, *Three*, *Four*; *One*, *Two*, *Three*, *Four*, and so on. As the right hand man numbers, the left-hand man will call out *Four*, the next *Three*, next *Two*, next *One* (completing the left section).

*Flanks of Sections—Prove.* } The Nos. 1 and 4 will prove.

*As you—Were.*—Cut the arm to the side.

*Horseholders—Prove.*—The Nos. 3 prove.

*As you—Were.*—As before.

*Sections—Right.* { On the word *Right* each section wheels a quarter circle to the right in four paces on its right-hand man, who marks time and turns on his own ground.

*Sections—Right.*—As before.

*Sections—About.* { On the word *About* each section wheels a half-circle to the right in eight paces on its right hand man, who marks time and turns on his own ground.

The leader then places himself close in front of, and facing, the centre guide, and dresses the troop.

*Eyes Centre.—Dress* { On the word *Dress* the men will turn their head and eyes right or left as the case may be, raising the left arm if on the right, and the right arm if on the left, of the guide (disengaged arm if with rifles) and get their dressing as in squad drill.

*Eyes—Front.* { On the word *Front* (given when the troop is dressed) every man will turn his head and eyes to the front and drop the arm.

*Stand at—Ease.*—As before.



## DECREASING THE FRONT.

S. 93 (a). *From Troop to Sections.*

*Form*  
*Sections.*  
*From the*  
*Right (or*  
*Left).*  
*Quick—*  
*March.*

On the word *March* the right section advances, the troop leader placing himself in line with and on the left of it, the other sections mark time, right incline and move in succession by the diagonal march, each section making a left incline together when its right hand man is immediately behind the right hand man of the section in front of it, and following on a four paces distant, the men covering the corresponding men of the section in front.

*Troop—Halt.*—On the word *Halt* every one remains steady. Movements may be similarly made from the right or left by half sections or single files.

S. 94 (b). *From Sections to Half Sections.*

*Form*  
*Half*  
*Sections.*  
*Quick—*  
*March.*

On the word *March* the Nos. 1 and 2 of the leading section advance, the troop leader placing himself in line with and on the left of it. The remainder mark time. Nos. 3 and 4 of the leading section incline to the right, follow, and cover at two paces distant. The remainder move off in succession in the same way, keeping their proper distance and covering

*Troop—Halt.*—As before.

S. 95 (c). *From Half Sections to Single Files.*

*Form*  
*Single*  
*Files.*  
*Quick—*  
*March.*

On the word *March* the No. 1 of the section leading advances, the troop leader placing himself in line with and on the left of him. The remainder mark time. No. 2 inclines to the right. No. 3 marches straight forward as it comes to his turn covering and following No. 2. The No. 4 inclines to the right, covers and follows No. 3. The remainder move off in succession in the same way.

## INCREASING THE FRONT.

S. 96 (a). *From Single Files to Half Sections.*

*To the Halt.*  
*Form Half Sections.*  
*Quick—March.*

On the word *March* No. 1 of the section leading advances three paces and halts. No. 2 inclines to the left, and forms on the left of No. 1, the troop leader closing to the left and making room for him. No. 3 marches straight forward, halts at two paces from and covers No. 1. No. 4 inclines to the left and forms on the left of No. 3. The remainder form in the same way.

Sections may also be formed direct from single file.

S. 97 (b). *From Half Sections to Sections.*

*To the Halt.*  
*Form Sections.*  
*Quick March.*

On the word *March* the Nos. 1 and 2 of the section leading advance three paces and halt. Nos. 3 and 4 incline to the left and form on their left, the troop leader making room for them. The remainder form in the same way.

S. 98 (c). *From Sections to Troop.*

*To the Halt.*  
*Form Troop.*  
*Quick March.*

On the word *March* the leading section advances three paces, and halts, the other sections incline to the left until opposite their places, when they incline to the right and form on the left of those already formed, the troop leader moves to his place in front of the centre guide.

The troop can be formed on the right of the head of the column by the command *On the right, Form Troop*,—when all the rear sections will incline to the right and form on the right of those already formed. It must, however, be clearly understood that the troop is always formed on the left, unless the caution *On the right*, is given.

## MOVEMENTS TO A FLANK.

S. 99 (a). *By Sections.*

*Sec.—Right (or Left).*—On the word *Right (or Left)* the whole wheel sections right (or left).

*Quick—March.*—As before.

S. 100 (b). *By Half Sections.*

*Half Sec.* } On the word *Right (or Left)* the half sections  
*—Right* } wheel to the right (or left).  
*(or Left).* }

*Quick —March.*—As before.

S. 101 (c). *By Single Files.*

*Right (or Left)—Turn.*—As before.

*Quick—March.*—As before.

## SADDLERY.

S. 102. *Manner of Fitting Saddlery.*

*The Bit* should touch the corners of the mouth, but should hang low enough not to wrinkle them.

*The Curb Chain* should be laid flat and smooth under the jaw and should admit two fingers easily between it and the jawbone.

*The Headstall* should be parallel to and behind the cheekbone.

*The Noseband* should be the breadth of two fingers below the cheekbone, and should admit two fingers between it and the nose.

*The Throat Lash* should admit the breadth of two fingers between it and the horse's throat, with the buckle 1 inch below the browband, on the near side.

*The Head Rope* should be fastened on to the lower ring of the jowl piece, or, where bridles are without jowl piece, then on the ring provided, passed round the near side of the neck and fastened on to the standing part of the rope with a coil of turns

of which the top end should be 6 to 8 inches from the horse's bowl. They should be worn fairly tight, and not hanging loosely about the shoulders.

*The Saddle* should be placed in the middle of the back, the front of it, if possible, about the breadth of the hand behind the play of the shoulder.

*The Numnah* when used should be raised well into the fork of the saddle over the withers by putting the arm under it, the front strap to be carried over and in front of the front arch of the saddle.

*The Saddle Blanket* when used will, as a rule, be folded the longest way of the blanket in two, and then again into three, the ragged edge of the blanket to be on the near and rear side, to be placed crossways on the horse, care being taken that, in putting it on, it is pushed well up into the arch of the saddle, and that it projects at least 2 or 3 inches in front of the saddle.

*The Girth* must be tightened gradually, and not with violence, and should admit one finger between it and the horse, slack girth frequently causes sore back.

*The Surcingle* lies flat over and is not tighter than the girth.

## RIDING INSTRUCTION.

### S. 102. *General Remarks.*

Military equitation consists in the skilful and ready application of the "*aids in horsemanship*" by which the rider guides and controls his horse in all its paces, and in a settled balance of the body, which enables him to preserve a firm seat in every variety of movement.

"*Aids in horsemanship*" are the motions and proper applications of the bridle hand and leg to direct and determine the turnings and paces of the horse, by which the horse will obtain

a light mouth and yield to the impulse he receives from the rider, who should be able to guide his horse with his bridle hand and legs, and be capable on all occasions of preserving a firm seat, and of having his right hand and arm at full liberty for the use of his weapons.

Horses are to be ridden on all four reins, and kept well up to their bits either at a walk or a trot. At the trot each man should rise in the stirrups, throwing the weight of his body forward. The weight of the body should be almost entirely supported by the knees and thighs pressing against the horse's sides, and by the feet resting in the stirrups; in this manner it is hardly ever upon the seat of the saddle, and is borne by the side bars, and thus supported by the ribs of the horse, the possibility of injuring the backbone is minimized.

The training of the horse is a matter of great importance to the efficiency of all mounted troops. Although it is unnecessary that the horses provided for mounted troops, who rely mainly upon their dismounted action, should be as highly trained as those provided for cavalry, yet it is of the utmost consequence that all horses should stand still to be mounted, should be easily handled in manœuvre, stand fire, and above all lead well.

No pains should be spared to reach a high standard of efficiency, and every effort should be made to train the horses to stand quite still by themselves when their riders dismount to fire.

Care must be taken that the men do not ride too short, and that they sit well down in the middle of the saddle. They should be told how to preserve their balance, and at the same time to sit easily and without stiffness.

If a man standing in the stirrups can just clear the pomme with his fork, the stirrups are about the right length.

A man may often guide his horse as much by his legs as by his hands; if ridden with a light give-and-take feeling, the horse usually will not pull at his rider. Men must be taught to use the sides of the legs, and to keep the heels down.

Great care should be taken at all times to prevent the men from sitting on their horses in a slovenly way.

#### S. 104. *Positions.*

*Attention.*—Stand (as in Squad drill) on near side of horse, feet in line with horse's fore feet, hold the near top rein with right hand about 6 inches from ring. Keep horse's muzzle level with your chest.

*Stand at Ease.*—The hand will slide down from the rein (which will be kept in the hand) to the full extent of the arm, at the same time carry the left foot about 1-foot length to the left.

#### S. 105. *Leading and Standing to the Horse.*

*Reins Over.*—The men standing on the near side of the horse in line with the horse's fore feet will, while the reins are on the neck, put the bottom reins over and in front of the top reins, and then pass the top reins over the head, and hold them with the right hand, the forefinger between them, and about 6 inches from the horse's jaw, the right hand as high as the shoulder, the end of the reins in the left hand, which hangs by the left side.

*In Front of your Horses.*—Take a full pace forward with the right foot, and turn about on the ball of it. Take a top rein in each hand near the rings, still holding the end of them in the left hand. Raise the horse's muzzle the height of your own chest, and 6 inches from it, hands as high as the shoulders (elbows down). Make the horse stand even. This is how a horse is shown for inspection.

*Stand to your Horses.*—Take a full step forward with the right foot, to the horse's near side, and turn left about on the ball of it, coming to *Attention*.

Instruction should be given in these movements when the reins are hanging on the horse's necks.

*Leading the Horse.*—Horses are led with the reins held as detailed for *Reins Over*.

*Leading through a narrow Opening.*—The man will place himself in front of his horse. Taking a rein in each hand, near the bit, and stepping backwards, will see that the horse's hips are clear of the posts. When the horse is through, the man will place himself again on the near side.

#### S. 106. *Mounting.*

*Prepare to Mount.*—Leaders and odd numbers will lead forward one horse's length. Turn to the right, place right foot opposite stirrup, and with the left hand take up the reins as follows:—Right lower between the 2nd and 3rd fingers, left lower between the 3rd and 4th fingers, right upper between the 1st and 2nd fingers, left upper outside the 4th finger. Then seize reins at the ends with right hand, and draw them up until an even and gentle feeling is obtained on the horse's mouth, at the same time placing the left hand about 12 inches in front of the saddle and grasping with it a lock of the mane. Then throw ends of reins over the left forefinger and to offside of horse's neck, and close left thumb on reins. Take hold of the stirrup with the right hand till the left foot is placed in it, seize the waist of the saddle with the right hand (well over).

*Mount.*—Springing off the right foot, carry the right leg over the cantle by slightly bending the knee, and drop gently into

the saddle. At the same time shift the right hand to the pommel, place the right foot in the stirrup, quit the mane with the left hand, cut the right hand to the side. Even numbers will then dress up into line.

S. 107. *Mounting with Rifle.*

*Prepare to Mount.*—At the same time the reins are taken up, place the rifle on the near side of the horse's neck and seize it (butt down) in the left hand at the outer band, sling to front.

*Mount.*—Bring it to the *Advance*.

S. 108. *Dismounting.*

*Prepare to Dismount.*—Leaders and odd numbers will move forward one horse's length. Take hold of the reins with the right hand above the left, slide the left hand forward 12 inches from the saddle, grasp a lock of the mane in the left hand, take the right foot out of the stirrup, and place the right hand on the pommel of the saddle.

*Dismount.*—Raise the body from the saddle, supporting it with the right hand and left foot, swing the right leg clear of the horse, drop on the ground, the right foot to reach the ground before the left foot quits the stirrup. The even numbers will then move up into line, and all will come to attention as soon as possible. If it is desired that the even numbers should not dress up after dismounting, the command, *Dismount*, will be preceded by the caution, *Even Numbers Stand Fast*.

S. 109. *Dismounting with Rifle.*

*Prepare to Dismount.*—Raise the rifle perpendicularly in front of the face, magazine to the left hand as high as the chin, lower the butt sling to the front under the left arm and in front of the near wallet, seizing it with the left hand at the outer band.

*Dismount.*—Bring the rifle to the order at the left side.



S. 110. *Positions.*

*Mounted.*—The head and body erect and square to the front, the left upper arm hangs straight from shoulder, fore arm nearly at right angles to the upper, hand 3 to 6 inches from and opposite centre of waist, back of hand to the front, thumb pointing across the body, reins thrown over left thumb with thumb closed on reins. Right arm hangs easily from shoulder, behind thigh, back outwards and tips of fingers turned up. This is "*Attention.*"

*Sit at Ease.*—Place the left hand on pommel of saddle and the right on top of the left.

*Advance Arms.*—The right hand grasping the rifle behind the back sight is placed with the flat of the rifle resting on the upper part of the right thigh, muzzle of rifle pointing to the horse's left ear, and right elbow slightly inclined outwards.

*Carry Arms.*—From the "*Advance,*" without altering the grasp, place the butt in the hollow of the right thigh, muzzle to lean to the front, and slightly to the right, trigger-guard to the left.

*Sling Arms.*—Raise the rifle above the head, and with a left circular movement pass the head between the rifle and sling, lower the weight on to left shoulder with the sling in front of, and the rifle behind the body, at the same time slip the right arm between the sling and the rifle.

*Unslung Arms.*—Bend the right arm, slip elbow under the rifle and with it give the rifle a cant forward until it is hanging on the neck, then seize it with the right hand at the balance, and by an upward circular motion disengage and bring it to the advance.

S. 111. *Saluting.*

A man when mounted without arms will, when two horses' lengths from the officer, bring his right hand smartly up to his bridle hand, turn his head towards him, and, after a short pause put his right hand to *Attention* looking to his front after passing.

If halted, and an officer approaches, he will come smartly to *Attention*, and proceed as before.

If at the Advance, he will, when two horses' lengths from the officer, bring his rifle to the *Carry*, turn his head towards him, and, after passing, look to his front and Advance Arms.

If the rifle is slung, he will salute as without arms.

An officer when mounted salutes the same as when dismounted.

The words of command when paying or returning a compliment are *Attention, Carry—Arms. Eyes—Right (or Left)*.

*Passing an Officer.*—If leading a horse the soldier will turn his head smartly and look the officer in the face.

S. 112. *Mode of Swimming a Horse.*

Before swimming his horse the rider should slip the stirrups up to the top of the leathers, securing them from slipping by placing the leathers through the stirrups. The reins should be unbuckled or knotted, so that the horse cannot catch his feet in them. He should ride into the water, and as soon as the horse is out of its depth throw himself flat on the water on the down stream side, guiding the horse with the reins. The man should regain the saddle as soon as the horse regains its footing.

NOTE.—In swimming horses over a wide stream where boats are available, horses should be stripped with the exception of the bridle, and led in rear of the boats, which should be steadily rowed over.

S. 113. *Teaching Horses to Stand Steady.*

Single horses can be kept stationary in the following ways :—

- (a) By being trained to stand whenever the reins are taken over the head and placed on the ground.
- (b) By securing the reins to the stirrup iron, or girth.

S. 114. *Teaching a Horse to Stand Still Without being Held.*

There is no necessity to point out the importance of horses being trained to stand still without being tied up. With a horse thus trained a man can jump off and fire, or if he gets a fall the chances are that the reins will come over the horse's head, and that the horse will stand where it is.

They can be trained by any of the following ways :—

*First Method.*—Tie a strong piece of rope to the bit, and fasten a sack to the end of it. The effect of this is that as the horse moves forward he treads on the sack, and gives himself a severe jar in the mouth ; after a few lessons it will be found that he will not move when the reins are thrown over his head.

*Second Method.*—Throw the reins over the horse's head, at the same time fasten a cord from the bit to fetlock. This will give him a similar jar in the mouth every time he makes a step.

*Third Method.*—A weight, such as a sand bag, weighing about 10 lbs. to 14 lbs., fastened to the top rein hung over the horse's head will answer the purpose.

However well trained a horse may be to stand alone, there is always a risk, unless fastened so that he cannot move, that he will move off either to join other horses, or to get water or food, or on account of being frightened.

S. 115. *Walking on Foot.*

The best long distance performances of mounted troops have been done by those who made a habit of walking on foot a great deal when on the march, especially down hill. Horses can easily be taught to lead well at a walk, and it is not difficult to train them to move in quick time.

S. 116. *Unsaddling.*

A frequent cause of sore backs is the stoppage of the circulation under the saddle, due to the saddle being girthed up and remaining for long hours in this position.

Even when there is not time to "unsaddle," loosening the girths and shifting the saddle eases the horse greatly. If unsaddling be regularly practised, it is surprising how very short time it takes. It is advisable in warm weather to unsaddle once a day on the drill ground, or in the open country, whenever the horses are absent from their stables for any length of time. In cold weather, the girths should only be slackened, and the saddle shifted, as taking the saddle off may cause a chill. When the saddles are removed, the backs should be at once hand-patted, slapped with the flat of the hand, and rubbed with steady pressure against the direction of the hair for a few minutes in order to restore circulation.

S. 117. *Rolling in the Sand.*

Nothing freshens a horse up more than a good roll in the sand, and they soon pick up the habit. A handful of sand poured over the back often induces a horse to lie down and roll.

S. 118. *Weight off the Back.*

Another most important point to be impressed on all ranks is the fact that even the lightest soldier is a heavy burden, and every minute that weight is removed from the horse's back is a

refreshing period of relief. Hence, when the men are working independently during long days, they should be told to dismount as often as practicable, and instructors should practise them in this by frequently making them dismount for a few minutes at a time. The relief to the horse may be compared to that experienced by a man putting down his rifle or a bundle for a few moment's rest when on the march on foot.

### S. 119. STABLE DUTIES.

1. The establishment and maintenance of a proper system of stable discipline are of the first importance. Upon this the health and condition of the horses, and consequently the efficiency of the corps, depend. Stable duties must never, therefore, be allowed to sink to the level of a mere fatigue, the same punctuality and regularity is to be observed as for any other parade.

Squadron officers will attend all stables.

2. On *Stables* sounding the men "*Fall in*" by troops in stable dress with grooming kit, and answer their names.

The troop leaders will then detail sufficient men to lead the horses to water, two men to draw the feed, and the remainder clean the troop lines while the horses are watering, this work to be completed by the time the horses return. On return of the horses from water each man will take over his horse, secure it on the lines, and groom it.

During stable hours no man is to leave the stables or horse lines without the permission of his troop officer, nor is any man to stop grooming to clean his saddlery until his horse is passed as clean.

Officers will carefully note the condition of a horse's coat both as to cleanliness and health. The mane and tail should also be examined.

3. An officer (mounted) will be in charge of each squadron's horses going to water.

No man will, under any circumstances, lead more than four horses.

The captain of the day (mounted) will superintend the watering of all horses.

Horses are to be taken quietly to and from water without trotting or hurrying, and should, when possible, be watered before, and not under ordinary circumstances until two hours after feeding.

Full time is to be given the horses while drinking, and care must be taken that the men do not hurry them.

The feeds, both of corn and hay, will be made out by a N.C.O., assisted by the stable orderlies and placed behind the horses.

The horses are not to be fed before the senior officer on the lines or in stables orders the *Feed* to sound, on the report being made to him that the feeds are ready.

The senior officer, on the report *All Fed* being made to him, will order the *Dismiss* from stables, before which no officer, N.C. officer, or man will leave stables or horse lines. On no account is a horse to be groomed whilst feeding.

Before turning out of stables everything is to be properly arranged in its place:—

Barrows emptied, litter squared, tools collected, buckets filled, saddlery arranged, and stablemen properly told off.

4. Officers commanding squadrons will satisfy themselves that due provision has been made for watering, feeding, and grooming horses of men who are not at stables; also that squadron-farrier sergeants inspect each horse's shoes, back, &c., at all stables, that any horses ailing have been sent for the veterinary officers' inspection at the time fixed, and any horse requiring shoeing to the forge.

Troop leaders are responsible that all the horses of their sections are properly looked after and fed.

For inspection, or when a senior officer enters a stable or visits the horse lines, the order will be given *Stand to your Horses*. The men will resume work on the order *Carry on*.

5. In the day time during non-stable hours the horse lines or stables are in charge of *line* sentries or stablemen. These men come on duty to relieve the night stable piquet at the warning for morning stables. Their duties are to keep the lines and stables clean, to prevent horses injuring themselves or others, and to take the nose bags off when they have finished feeding. The officer on duty, when he visits the stables or horse lines, will satisfy himself that these duties are performed. The meals of the *line* sentries or stablemen are brought to them by the orderlies.

6. Horses on the sick-list will not remain in the squadron stables or lines, but will be removed to the sick horse lines, and placed under special charge of the veterinary officer.

7. Horses should be brought into the lines as cool as possible. If horses are sweating the men should dismount, loosen girths, and lead ten minutes before reaching lines.

Horses should under ordinary circumstances be unbitted and their girths loosened when watered, and if possible the men must dismount.

If, when the saddle is removed, a horse's back is found to be wet, it should be dried. The removal of a saddle too soon is a frequent cause of sore backs.

If the horses are not brought in till near the men's dinner hour they will be watered and fed only. *Stables* will sound after the men have had their dinners.

After the horses are sufficiently groomed the men should get to work at their kit and saddlery.

When the horses are not fed at the end of the stable hour, each man should be permitted to leave stables as soon as the N.C. Officer of his troop is satisfied that he has done his work.

## S. 120. SKIRMISHING.

### *General Rules.*

1. Skirmishing implies extended order, in which each individual should act and think for himself, and make use of all his powers, mental and physical, to attain a common object. It is essential that the intelligence of each man should be developed by every possible means, and that a spirit of independent action, subject to the control and general directions of the troop and section leaders, should be encouraged.

2. In order that the soldier may become a skilful, active, and resourceful skirmisher, he should be trained to use his wits.

3. It is an important formation against a well-armed enemy. The attack is generally carried out by successive lines of skirmishers, who work forward, to decisive range, and then gradually merging into one another, push forward until they form a strong firing line, enveloping, or partly enveloping, the enemy's position at the closest possible range.

4. For instructional purposes a squad with arms, will be formed, and, after a few drills, two squads should be exercised together, and the methods of reinforcing, retiring, and rushing carried out.

5. In order that the recruit may be accustomed to use his intelligence and initiative from the commencement of his training as a skirmisher, it will be explained to him that it is a tactical exercise, and not a drill; that the object is to teach him the practical methods of advancing and retiring, the use of cover, and the application of fire; and that mechanical precision in performing the various movements is not to be aimed at.



6. Skirmishers come to the "trail" when extending and stand at ease after closing, without word of command, correct dressing and keeping step are to be dispensed with, when halted they will either lie down or take up such a position behind cover as will afford them protection, and enable them to use their rifles with effect.

7. Although words of command are used for drill purposes it is to be distinctly understood that in the practical work all orders, as far as possible, are to be conveyed by signal.

8. At drill (dismounted), skirmishers will extend at the double and close in quick time; the section on which the close is made will halt if the line is not already halted.

9. When mounted, extensions will be made at the next increased pace, or at the trot if done from the halt, and sections will close at the next increased pace, the section on which the close is made continuing to move forward, unless the section on which the close is made is halted, or the movement is ordered to be done "to the halt," in which cases the sections will close at the trot.

10. During exercises the squadron and troop leaders should occasionally fall out as casualties, and the men carry on the practices.

#### S. 121. *Special Points for Instruction and Explanation.*

Some of the most important points to teach skirmishers are—

1. The systematic and intelligent use of cover, and the difference between it and concealment.

2. Nursing the ammunition.

3. Fire effect, and surprise fire.

4. Rapid, concealed, and protected advances.

5. In taking cover the first principle is to adapt a position that with the minimum of exposure the rifle can be effectively used.

6. Exposure on sky line or against background which would show them up.

7. Avoid crowding.

8. That cover should be selected when advancing, and if there is no cover near, or that which exists is already occupied, they must throw themselves down in the open and lie as flat as possible.

#### S. 122. *Course of Instruction.*

To be divided into preliminary training and practical application.

#### S. 123. *Preliminary Training.*

This will be carried out on level ground as a drill, intervals being generally maintained, and all movements, commands, signals, being strictly in accordance with these instructions.

#### S. 124. *Practical Application.*

This will be conducted in such a way as to give skirmishers an opportunity of practising the various duties they may be called upon to carry out in the field, and should embrace the following :—

1. Attack of an enemy in position.
2. Defence of a position.
3. Reconnaissance of a position or locality held by an enemy.
4. Reconnoitring ground over which an advance is to be made.
5. Driving in patrols, scouts, and snipers.
6. Covering a retirement.
7. Occupying positions and quickly denying ground to the enemy.

S. 125. *Preliminary Training.**Extending from line advancing.*

From the  
centre by  
sections  
to . . . . .  
paces—  
“Extend.”

On the word *Extend*, the centre section will open out to two paces (one horse's length mounted) from its No. 3, and move straight on, the remaining sections will right or left incline as the case may be, double, and, on gaining their intervals will left or right incline into line and take up the *Quick March*. The men of each section will open out to two paces from the left if on the right of, and from the right, if on the left of, the centre section, and the extension is meant to be the interval between the sections after the men in the sections have opened out.

Extensions from a flank are similarly carried out.

S. 126. *Closing from Line.*

On the  
centre—  
“Close.”

On the word *Close* the centre section will close on its No. 3, and halt, if line not already halted, the other sections will wheel inwards and re-form line.

S. 127. *Extending from Column of Sections.*

On the  
right  
(or left)  
to . . . . .  
paces—  
“Extend.”

On the word *Extend* the leading section will continue straight on and open out to two paces from its No. 3, the sections in rear will right (or left) incline at the double, and form in line at the proper interval on the right of the leading section and then take up the *Quick March*.

On the command to *Close* after extending from column, the squad will re-form in line in close order, and then, if necessary be moved on in sections.

S. 128. *Extending to a Flank.*

From the  
rear section  
to the right  
(or left) to  
...paces—  
"Extend."

On this command the rear section wheels in the required direction and halts, the remaining sections wheel in succession when the required interval is reached.

S. 129. *Inclining when Extended.*

"Right  
Incline."

On the word *Incline* each man will turn half-right and move on by the diagonal march. *Left Incline* will be the command to resume the former direction.

S. 130. *Changing Direction.*

Change  
direction  
half-right  
(or left) on  
the centre  
section.

On the word *Section* the centre section will wheel half-right and move on, those on its right will step short and align themselves with the centre section, the sections on its left will right incline at the double, and get in line with the directing section at proper interval.

Changes of direction may also be made half-right (or left) in the right (or left) section.

S. 131. *Retiring.*

*Re-tire.* On this command the men will turn about and move on in the new direction.

S. 132. *Practical Skirmishing.*

When the preliminary training is finished its practical application will be taught on broken ground, and although uniformity of action is not to be demanded, nor too much care given to intervals and dressing, still each man should move with smartness and alacrity, strictly maintaining both silence and attention.

Advances may be made alternately or otherwise, at the double, in quick time, or even by crawling.

Orders are to be conveyed by signal or by passing them along the line of skirmishers.

A section will be ordered to direct, and the direction pointed out to all. Each section takes its share in maintaining the direction towards the objective. The troop leader remains with the section of direction, and the others conform to their movements in marching, changing, direction, halting, and retiring, signals are unnecessary and the method has the advantage of stimulating the interest and intelligence of the men.

Skirmishers should be taught to report the enemy's dispositions, and to call attention to movements of other units.

Intervals may vary considerably and depend on the nature of the ground, the character of the operation, and the volume of fire it is desired to bring to bear. It should be clearly recognised that over-extension results in loss of control, and diminishes the volume of fire, and is dangerous in close country or whenever counter attack is probable. It is essential, therefore, before extending that the front to be occupied should be carefully explained. The normal interval for extension is sixteen paces.

Intervals are increased or reduced by the order being passed along the line *Increase or Decrease the Interval to..... paces.*

S. 133. *Cover.*

The importance of concealment must be impressed on all ranks. Officers and N.C. Officers must set an example in this respect, and see that it is followed by the men.

Cover to be efficient must fulfil the following conditions :—

- (a) Afford a good view of the ground in front.
- (b) Permit the free use of the rifle.
- (c) Give concealment to the firer.
- (d) Provide protection against the enemy's fire.

Instructors should, as far as possible, illustrate the various uses of cover.

S. 134. *Fire Effect.*

The fire unit is the troop or section, it must be explained that—

- (a) Fire is most effective when it is steadily delivered at a mark that can be seen.
- (b) Success depends mainly upon accurate individual fire at decisive range, and long range fire should not be used without special directions.
- (c) In crises, and against large and conspicuous targets, fire should be as rapid as is compatible with accuracy. In ordinary cases fire should be slow.
- (d) The moral and material effect of concentrated fire is greater than when each man fires at a mark of his own selection.
- (e) Oblique, or enfilade fire is more effective than frontal and gives better results, and usually has greater moral effect.
- (f) Fire delivered unexpectedly at short ranges gives good results, and men should watch for such chances.

- (g) A few good men, widely extended, and concealed, may by rapid fire, often deceive the enemy, and inflict serious loss.

Every available rifle should be placed in the firing line, and the serrefiles, unless required for supervising or other duty should be in line, and firing with the troop.

#### S. 135. *Fire Discipline.*

Fire discipline means strict attention to the signals and orders of the commander, combined with intelligent observation of the enemy. It insures the careful adjustment of the sight, deliberate aim, economy of ammunition, and prompt cessation of fire when the target disappears, or the leader sounds his whistle.

It requires of the men endurance of the enemy's fire, even when no reply is possible; and, when superior control no longer exists, a cool and intelligent use of the rifle.

#### S. 136. *Attack Practice.*

The following rules are given as a guide:—

1. Extensions should be made, if possible, under cover, and instructions as to direction and objective given before extending.

2. Whilst the general direction is maintained, the men may deviate to the right or left to take advantage of cover, but regain their intervals before crossing exposed ground.

3. That they do not crowd.

4. In order to take advantage of a well-sheltered approach from one position to another, they may move in file, but only when ordered to do so by their leader.

5. Exposed ground will, if the enemy's fire is heavy and accurate, be crossed by rushes at the quickest possible pace. Ground which affords slight cover may be crossed by running.

creeping, or crawling forward by ones or twos by different courses, at different times and from different points of the line.

6. It is important that before or during an advance each man should mark out for himself the new position he intends to occupy—which should be as nearly as possible—to his front, and not mask or interfere with the fire of his comrades.

7. The men of a section should keep together.

8. When two or more troops are advancing in a general line, and it is no longer possible to retain this formation under the enemy's fire, the advance will be continued by alternate rushes. The leader of the body ordered to advance will give the order or signal to his men. He will lead the way, halt as before described, and commence firing. When he halts and opens fire, the next troop which has been firing in order to cover the advance, will now rush forward, halt in line with the troop in front, and open fire; or each successive troop may be taken beyond the one in front.

#### S. 137. *Position of Leaders.*

Troop and squadron leaders place themselves where they can best carry out their duties; but, as a rule, they should be in front, and show the way from cover to cover. In open ground, when the line is halted and the enemy's fire heavy, they must lie down among the men, and near the centre of their commands.

#### S. 138. *Duties of Leaders.*

1. To explain clearly to every man the objective of the manœuvre about to be carried out, and how it is to be reached.
2. To select the successive halting places.
3. To determine the method of advance.
4. To maintain the general direction.



5. To prevent crowding.
6. To point out target and give the range.
7. To control the expenditure of ammunition, and report when it is running short.
8. To lead the way from cover to cover.
9. To prevent wild firing.
10. To repeat signals and obey orders promptly.

#### S. 139. *Duties of Rank and File.*

It should be impressed upon the men that combined action is always more likely to be successful than isolated efforts, and that men fighting under the control of leaders and alongside comrades are more confident and co-operate more effectively than when each man advances, retires, or halts, as seems best to himself.

It is to be recognised, however, that when men are extended at wide intervals, and also when under heavy fire, troop and even section leaders cannot always exercise direct control. Hence the men must learn to act independently, first by clear explanations, then by practice accompanied by constant questioning, until every individual knows exactly what is expected of him when left to himself, viz. :—

1. Continue fighting, and do his best to carry out his commander's intentions.
2. On no account to retire or give ground.
3. Fire deliberately, and husband ammunition.
4. If reinforcements come up, take the orders of the nearest officer or N.C.O.

#### S. 140. *Reinforcing.*

It is inevitable in action that regiments, squadrons, and troops will become mixed up. It is important to accustom men to such conditions, and to make them understand that

They use their intelligence and their eyes, confusion may be readily reduced to order. For this purpose two troops may be extended in two parallel lines. On the word or signal *Reinforce* the rear troop will advance and occupy the intervals in the front line, no regard being paid to the order in which the men place themselves.

Attention should be given to the following:—

1. The men should at once look to the nearest troop leader for orders.

2. They should re-organize when the cover affords a good opportunity.

Troops should be practised in reinforcing on either flank by prolonging the line to the right or left.

#### S. 141. *Assembling.*

Troops will be taught to assemble after attack practice, in column in rear of their leaders. On the command "Assemble" troop leaders will double out and take up their position in column, the men falling in at the double without noise in rear of their respective troop leaders.

#### S. 142. *Retiring.*

Retirements must be conducted with the greatest circumspection. If well in hand, the men may retire from cover to cover at the quickest possible pace, a few of the most active being left behind for a short time at each halt to cover the retirement of the remainder. Troops may also retire alternately, affording each other mutual support, by taking up successive positions. If, however, the men are at all shaken, as when an attack has failed, the retirement must be in quick time, and all ranks should exert themselves to the utmost to insure that

it is carried out, notwithstanding losses, with steadiness and regularity, it pulls the men together, and imposes caution on the enemy. A rapid retreat, in such conditions, is a fruitful source of panic, and gives the enemy much encouragement.

An extended line should also practice withdrawing men one at a time, with instructions to rally under cover. In all forms of retirement in extended order the men will *turn about*.

#### S. 143. *Relieving.*

1. *When halted*, the new line extends, if possible, under cover advances to the old line, and lies down in the intervals. The old line then retires under its protecting fire, and closes when it reaches cover, or halts at a suitable distance in rear.

2. *When retiring*, the new line extends a considerable distance in rear, and each man selects a good position. The old line doubles through the new, and closes when it reaches cover, or halts at a suitable distance in rear.

#### S. 144. *Rallying.*

Skirmishers attacked by cavalry should form *Rallying Squares* by one or two sections closing back to back, and delivering well directed fire.

#### S. 145. *Defence Practice.*

The chief points to be attended to in the occupation of a post or position are—

1. Each skirmisher is in a position to use his rifle effectively
2. Invisibility.
3. Ranges ascertained as far as possible.
4. Protection of flanks.

## DISMOUNTED DUTY.

S. 146. *General Instructions.*

The cases where mounted troops would be most effectively employed upon dismounted duty are—

- (a) To seize and hold tactical positions, often far in advance of the slower moving infantry columns, and to deny their occupation to the enemy.
- (b) While holding the enemy in front to turn and outflank him upon all occasions, and even by a widely extended manœuvre to threaten his rear.
- (c) To force a defile, or to seize a bridge, fords, &c.
- (d) To offer resistance, during a retreat, sufficient to compel the enemy to deploy, and thus to gain time.
- (e) To support cavalry or reconnoitring parties by covering their retreat through a defile, or by taking advantage of any other suitable position for bringing fire to bear unexpectedly on pursuing cavalry.
- (f) To form strongly posted points for the support of cavalry when attacking, and to hold in check an enemy's cavalry and artillery at bridges, fords, defiles, &c.
- (g) To defend camps, bivouacs, and unoccupied posts.

With reference to (b) a well directed fire opened upon the flank or rear of an enemy by even a small body of dismounted men, well placed under cover, has frequently had the effect of turning the enemy out of a strong position.

The utmost care is required in dismounting men where opposing cavalry could attack them.

Troops should dismount for fire action, if possible, under cover.

The nearer horses are to the men the better, as they gain confidence thereby and can then allow the enemy to

approach within easy range, at the same time retaining the power to mount and move off rapidly.

Mounting and dismounting must be carried out expeditiously and when mounted, the men should get away quickly.

Sections and larger units on fairly level ground where no immediate cover is available should gallop to the point where they are to dismount, and the led horses should be taken to the best available cover.

S. 147. *Methods of Carrying out Dismounted Duty.*

Dismounted duty may be performed by the following methods:—(1) By the whole force dismounting and linking horses. (2) By three-fourths dismounting and leaving the Nos. 1 mounted in charge of the horses of each section. Nos. 3 will be dismounted as soon as practicable.

*Method* (1) is applicable when a long continued dismounted action is contemplated, and when the horses are required to remain stationary. In the event of the dismounted men having left their horses at a distance, and it not being advisable to withdraw them from the firing line, the Nos. 3 only may be sent back to bring up the horses, the remainder maintaining their position.

*Link Horses  
Action.*

Troop leaders and odd numbers advance on horse's length.—All dismount. The even numbers bring their horses up into line, and close in towards the centre; the men then take one pace to the front, and turn about facing their horses. The head-ropes, without unfastening the knots, are brought over the horse's head clear of the reins. Each man then passes his head-rope to the man on his then right, who secures it with two half-hitches to the jowl-piece of his own horse's head collar.

Officers' horses will be linked on the right and serrefiles on the left of their troops.

Horses may be "ringed" into a circle by bringing round and tying the flanks together.

A horse guard will be detailed.

Horses may also be coupled or left singly by tying their heads round to the saddle.

*Method* (2) has the advantages of quickness and mobility, and should be usually adopted.

*Action.* { The troop leader and the odd numbers advance one horse's length, and all except Nos. 3 (who sling their rifles) dismount as rapidly as possible, the even numbers bring their horses up in line, and the horses of each section are handed over to the Nos. 3. The men then double out and form ten paces in front of their horses.

#### S. 148. *How the Horses should be Handed Over.*

Nos. 1, 2, and 4 will drop the bottom reins on to their horse's neck, and take the top reins clear over the horse's head and hand them to No. 3; No. 1 passing the reins between the jowl-piece and jaw of No. 2's horse. No. 3 will shorten up the reins of the led horses as far as practicable. Unless this is done good leading cannot be insured.

The horses will be left in charge of an officer or N.C.O., who is responsible that—

1. Precaution is taken against surprise.
2. Constant communication is kept up with the firing line.
3. Unless there is ample cover they are not to be in the line of fire in rear of the dismounted men, but, if possible, removed to a flank.
4. The horses of each section are kept distinct, with their heads towards the firing line.

S. 149. *Dismounting to a Flank.*

If it be required to dismount to the flank when in column or route (*i.e.*, column of sections), Nos. 1, 2, and 4 dismount and give their horses to No. 3, who will not advance in this instance.

S. 150. *To Mount.*

The horses will be brought up and halted close to the men who will remain steady until the command or signal *Mount* when they will run rapidly to their horses, mount independently and take their places in the ranks.

As soon as the Nos. 3 have released the horses, they will move up two horses' lengths, and the sections will reform on them.

NOTE.—As a general rule, the horses will be brought to the men.

S. 151. *Drill and Manœuvre of Led Horses.*

They should be exercised by word of command or signal, and accustomed to move at the trot or gallop in line or column.

A horse must be taught to lead well, and should be frequently exercised over bad ground, the man leading by the reins drawing over the horse's head. The Nos. 3 mounted will be frequently practised in leading the other horses of their sections.

If a horse will not lead at first, he can be easily taught to be followed by another man with a whip.

The horses should also be practised in being led by the men dismounted, each man taking his reins over and placing his arm through them. Blank ammunition should occasionally be fired in this position.

S. 152. *Explanation of Movement.*

It is of the utmost importance that the object of an intended movement should be fully explained to all ranks before an action takes place, and the few moments so employed will be more than repaid by the results gained from intelligent action.

S. 153. *Occupation of a Position.*

The following is a simple method of occupying a defined position by any given number of men whom it is desired to place multaneously in the firing line.

The officer commanding the troop or squad will select in the centre of the given position some conspicuous and definite object, for example, a tree, bush, or rock. He will similarly select objects upon the right and left of the position. These objects will be indicated to the centre man (or section), and to the flank men (or sections) respectively. When thoroughly understood by the whole troop, the officer commanding will direct the remaining men (or sections) to fill up the intervals. He will then give the command *Extend, Double (or Gallop) March*.

The men named will then move direct upon the objects, the remainder opening out and dividing the intervals.

The centre man (or section) will be usually detailed as the bit of direction.

Upon the arrival of the men upon the position indicated, each will select and take up a position and lie down, being careful not to expose himself against the sky line.

The movement will be constantly practised by single men and by sections until it is understood.

This movement constitutes the basis of the modern system of attack, and if carried out by the men mounted the extension should invariably be by sections, the front of the position selected varying according to the strength of the body of troops.



## TROOP DRILL MOUNTED.

S. 154. *Fundamental Principles of Mounted Drill.*

The principles of mounted drill are identical with those for the soldier on foot having regard to the difference in intervals, distances, and pace.

The essentials of mounted drill are simplicity, and rapidity and the first principle for the execution of any movement is that each unit is to be led to its position in the new formation by the shortest route in the simplest manner, and as rapidly as possible.

The object when training any body of mounted men is to so exercise it that it will be able to manœuvre by following its leader without commands.

The following are the principal tests by which the general drill efficiency of a body of mounted troops can be judged :—

- (1) That commands and signals are obeyed simultaneously and correctly.
- (2) That there is absence of noise and confusion.
- (3) That the various units are handled by their leaders alike in close or extended formations, by signal and in silence, with rapidity and smoothness.

And when in close formation—

- (4) That pace and direction are carefully maintained.
- (5) That distances and intervals are correctly kept from the unit of direction.
- (6) That wheels are accurately made.
- (7) That words of command are distinctly given.
- (8) That cohesion and steadiness are properly observed.

and when in extended order—

- (9) That the men act independently, with confidence, intelligence, and rapidity.
- (10) That troop and section leaders have sufficient latitude given them.

### S. 155. *Proving a Troop.*

Flanks of sections and others *Prove* by bringing the rifle to the *carry*, returning to the *Advance* on the command, *As you—ere*. If the rifle is slung the men act as in foot drill.

### S. 156. *Movements.*

The various movements done on foot will be practised counted, the command *Walk—March* being substituted for *Quick—March* and *Trot* for *Double*; also three horses' lengths or three paces except with regard to the positions of troop leaders and serrefiles, who will be one horse's length in front and rear respectively of the troop.

Marching in line and column.

Decreasing and increasing the front.

Inclining, in line and column (for short distances only).

Wheeling or changing direction, in line and column.

Advancing in column from line halted.

Forming column from line advancing.

Forming troop to the halt from column.

Forming troop in any direction from column on the move.

When required, formations may be made to the outer or inner flank.

S. 157. *Pace and Direction.*

To be a good judge of pace is one of the essential qualifications of a leader of mounted troops.

Officers and N.C.O.'s are not to be considered fit to lead until they have acquired proficiency in riding at the fixed rates over measured distances.

Evenness of pace is of great importance in manoeuvring mounted men, and N.C.O.'s and section leaders should be accustomed to set pace and give and keep the direction.

The commander of every unit is responsible for the leading of his command, the direction, if necessary, being indicated by him.

The rates of marching are, at a walk, 4 miles; trot, 8 miles and gallop, 15 miles per hour.

S. 158. *Dressing.*

This consists in—

(1) Every horse and rider being in a perfectly square position to the front.

(2) The preservation of correct intervals between files.

(3) The maintenance of the proper distance from the troop leader. All dressing will be towards the centre, and should, when possible, be done on the move and in rear of an alignment. No time is to be lost for dressing so long as the general line is correct, but this does not prevent the ranks being dressed at any point for an accurate alignment at the halt.

S. 159. *The March in Line.*

This march is regulated by the following principles:—

(a) Strict uniformity of pace.

(b) Correct and steady direction.

(c) Riding with proper intervals and distances.

(d) Looking straight to the front without crowding.

any change of direction of the troop leader is conformed to by the centre guide turning his horse the same degree when he arrives at the point where the troop leader changed, and by the men gradually but quickly placing their horses in the same direction and parallel to the leader's front.

In order to secure steadiness in the ranks it is important that on moving off from the halt at the trot or gallop the horses should be first put in motion at the walk, and then gradually but rapidly brought to the trot, and from it to the gallop. A similar gradation of pace is to be observed in coming to the halt from the gallop or trot.

The walk, trot, or gallop must commence and cease simultaneously throughout a body of troops.

If from any cause the leader's pace becomes irregular, the advance will be regulated by the centre guide.

If an obstacle stops a man, he will, without orders, drop back to the serrefile rank, resuming his place as opportunity offers.

#### S. 160. *Wheeling on a Fixed Pivot.*

All wheels of a troop from the *Halt* or at a walk are made on a fixed pivot except when a column changes direction. The troop leader moves on an arc with a radius equal to half-troop frontage.

#### S. 161. *Wheeling on a Moving Pivot.*

Wheels at the trot or gallop, and at all paces when a column changes direction, are executed on a moving pivot. The troop leader moves on an arc with a radius as follows:—

17 men in ranks (war strength), 12 yards.

14 men in ranks (peace strength), 9 yards,

The same general principles are to be observed as in wheels on a fixed pivot.

The troop leader continues, during the wheel, the same pace that the troop was moving at before the wheel was ordered.

The inner flank man will check to three-fourths the pace, the outer flank moves half as fast again as the centre, and the original pace will be resumed on completion of the wheel.

### S. 162. *The Wheel About of Troops.*

For drill and instructional purposes, the wheel about of troops to the right and left should be practised.

#### MOVING TO A FLANK.

### S. 163. (a) *By Half Sections.*

*Half Sections Right, Walk—March.* { The right half section wheels to the right and marches to the flank. The remainder move off in succession in the same manner.

### S. 164. (b) *By Single File.*

*Single Files Right, Walk—March.* { As for half section, substituting the word *File* for *Half Section*.

#### SQUADRON DRILL.

### S. 165. *General Instructions.*

It should be understood by all ranks that—

1. Each unit forming in succession *To the Halt* will, by order of its leader, halt a horse's length in rear of the alignment, dress up to it, and sit at ease.

2. Troops number from right to left in line, and front to rear in column and echelon as 1st, 2nd, 3rd, and 4th troops.
3. If a troop has less than nine men in the rank, it is advisable for drill purposes to divide it among the others, and thus avoid continually telling off fresh centre guides.
4. In *Column to Line* formations, the third troop forms on the right, and the second and fourth troops form on the left, of the leading troop, unless otherwise ordered.
5. In movements from *Line to Column*, unless a flank is named the formations will be made on the 2nd troop, followed in succession by the 3rd, 1st, and 4th troops.
6. When a movement is carried out simultaneously the commands will be given by the squadron leader.

#### S. 166. *Dressing and Covering.*

- (a) The centre guides cover their troop leaders at one horse's length distance.
- (b) The men keep in line with the guides.

When in line—

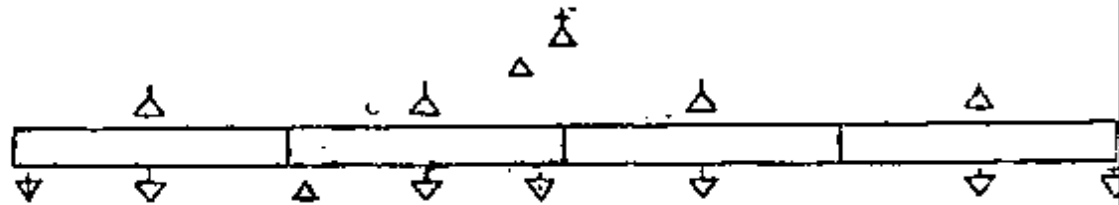
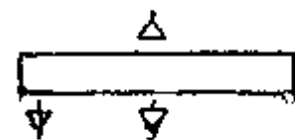
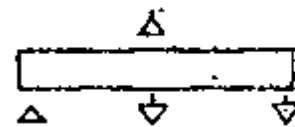
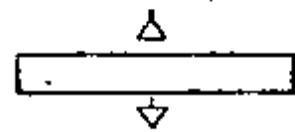
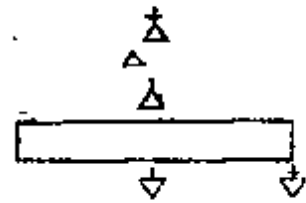
- (c) The troop leaders keep their alignment with and proper interval from the troop leader next them on the dressing hand.

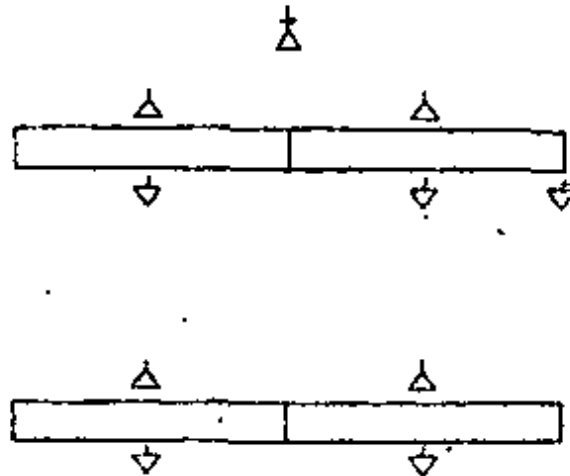
When in column—

- (d) The troop leaders cover the leader immediately in front at troop wheeling distance.

#### S. 167. *Direction.*

The centre (or second) troop leader (unless another is named) directs the squadron, and the squadron leader may indicate the object or instruct the directing troop leader to follow him.

S. 168. *Formation of the Squadron.*(a) *Line.*(b) *Squadron Column.*

(c) *Column of Half Squadrons.*S. 169. *Post of Officers, &c.*

*Squadron Leader*, for parade or inspection, one horse's length in front of the troop leaders, and opposite the centre of his squadron. When drilling, he is not restricted to any position.

*Troop Leader*, one horse's length in front of his centre guide.

*Serrefile Officers*—

IN LINE, one horse's length in rear of the centre of squadron.

IN SQUADRON COLUMN, one horse's length from the left flank and opposite the centre of squadron.

IN SECTIONS, one horse's length on the outer flank of the section covered in line.

*Troop Sergeant*, one horse's length in rear of centre guide.

*Serrefiles*, one horse's length behind the troop to which posted, if there be only one (in addition to the troop sergeant) he covers the right-hand man; if two, they cover the flank men, the senior being on the right, except where otherwise ordered. In Column of Sections they ride on the outer flank and in line with the section covered *In Line*.



*N.O. Officers—*

IN LINE—Squadron Sergt.-Major one horse's length in rear of right flank. Squadron Quarter-Master Sergt. one horse's length in rear of left flank. Farrier Sergt. one horse's length in rear of right flank of 3rd troop.

IN SQUADRON COLUMN—In the same position and in rear of the same troops as in line.

IN COLUMN OF SECTIONS—Squadron Sergt.-Major on the outer flank and in line with the leading section. Squadron Q.-M. Sergt. on the outer flank and in line with the rear section.

ON THE MARCH—The Squadron Sergt.-Major rides behind the rear body to check irregularities.

A trumpeter, when accompanying his leader, rides  $\frac{1}{2}$  horse's length interval on his left, and the same distance in rear of him. At other times he is in rear of the left flank of the 1st troop, the other trumpeter being in rear of the left flank of the 3rd troop.

S. 170. *Proving a Squadron.*

*Squadron—Attention. Flanks of Troops—Prove. As you—Were. Centre Guides—Prove. As you—Were.*

## THE SQUADRON MARCHING.

S. 171. (a) *In Line.*

On the leader's command or signal *Walk—March* the squadron moves off, the directing troop leader being responsible for the pace and direction. The others look to their front, align themselves with, and keep correct interval from, the dressing point by an occasional glance. When this can be well done, the

quadron should be practised in making long advances, commencing at a walk, and increasing the rate, to the trot and allop, and back again to the trot and walk.

S. 172. (b) *In Squadron Column.*

The leading troop leader pays attention to the pace and direction, and the others correctly cover the leader immediately in front of them.

S. 173. (c) *In Column of Half Squadrons.*

This is carried out on the same principle as the *March in Line*, the left troop leader of the first half squadron directs, and the left troop leader of the second half squadron is responsible for covering him at troop wheeling distance.

FORMATION OF SQUADRON COLUMN.

S. 174. (a) *From Line Halted.*

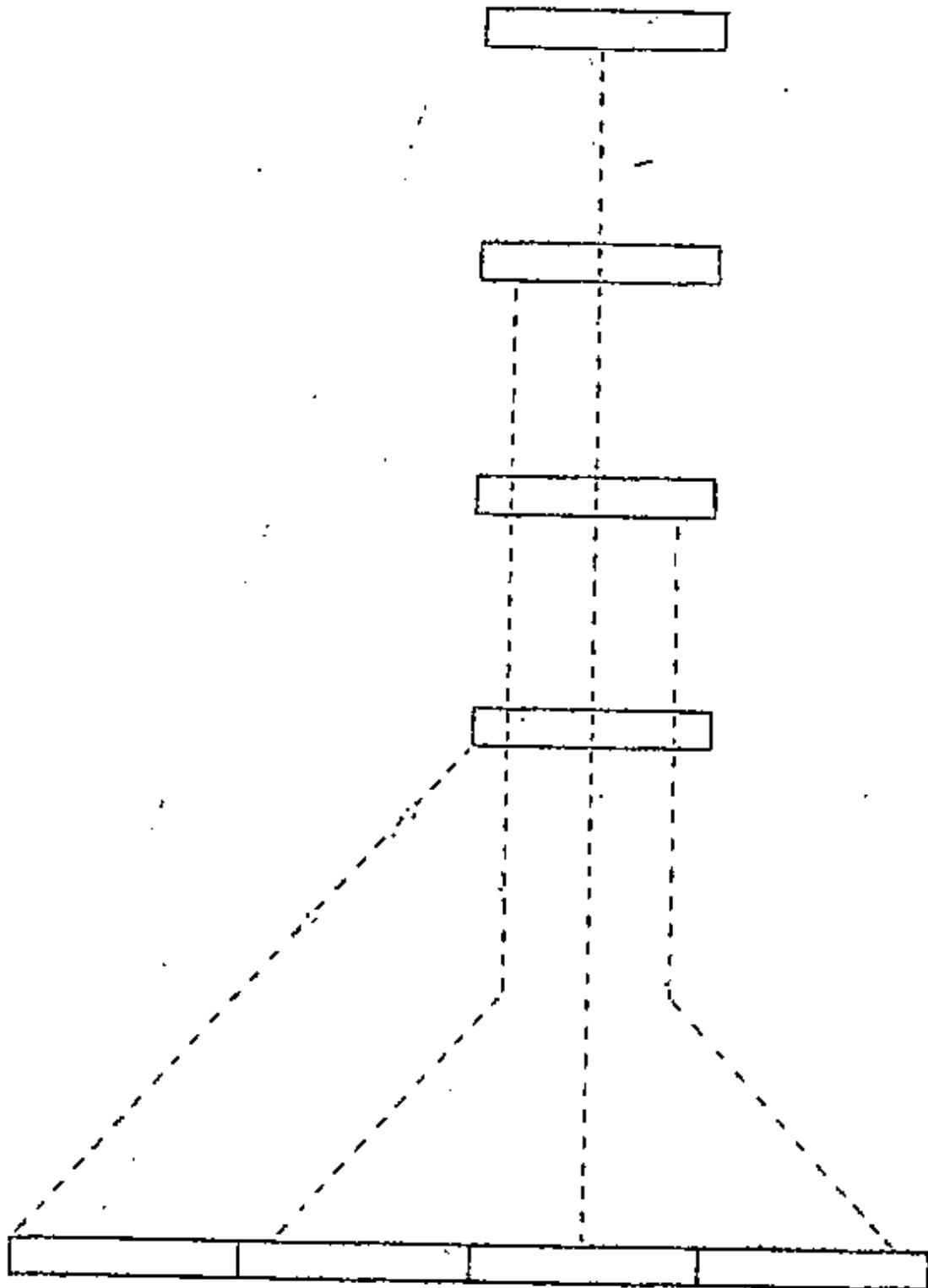
<p><i>Squadron Column from the Right (or Left) Walk—March.</i></p>	{	<p>On the word <i>March</i> the squadron moves off, the leaders of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th troops then at once give the command <i>Troop, Right—Incline</i>, and lead their troops until they themselves are successively in rear of the troop leader next in front, when they say <i>Troop, Left—Incline</i>, and follow, correctly covering the troop in front at column distance.</p>
--	---	--

If the flank is not named the squadron moves off, the 2nd troop being followed in succession by the 3rd, 1st, and 4th troops.

If required to be done *to the halt* the leader halts his squadron when column is formed.

S. 175. (b) *From Line on the Move.*

The squadron leader gives the command *Form Squadron Column—From the Right* (or *Left*) or *Squadron—Column*, and the movement is done in the same way as when halted.



Squadron Column from Line.

S. 176. (c) *From Column of Half Squadrons Halted.*

On the word *March* the leading half squadron advances and the 2nd troop leader gives the command *Troop, Right—Incline*, followed when he is behind the 1st troop leader by *Troop Left—Incline*; the 3rd troop leader (when the 2nd troop is at column distance from him) will give the command, *Troop, Walk—March*; the 4th troop leader (when the 3rd troop moves off) will give the command *Troop, Right—Incline, Walk—March*, followed when covering the 3rd troop by *Troop, Left—Incline*.

S. 177. (d) *From Column of Half Squadrons Moving.*

On this command the troop in the leading half squadron on the flank named will continue to move forward, and the other troop in the leading half squadron will incline and cover it; the troop leaders of the rear half squadron will give the command *Troop—Halt*, and then proceed as in forming when halted.

S. 178. (e) *From Column of Sections.*

The squadron leader gives the command *Form—Troops*, and each troop forms in line.

## FORMATION OF COLUMN OF HALF SQUADRONS.

S. 179. (a) *From Line Halted.*

On the word *March* the squadron moves off, the leaders of the 3rd and 4th troops give the command *Troop, Right (or Left)—Incline*, followed (when behind the half squadron in front) by *Troop, Left (or Right)—Incline*, closing to troop distance, and dressing by the left troops.

If the flank is not named the squadron moves off on the word *March*; the 1st troop leader gives the command *Troop, Left—Incline*, followed by *Troop, Right—Incline* when behind the 2nd troop; the 4th troop leader gives the command *Troop, Right—Incline*, followed by *Troop, Left—Incline* when behind the 3rd troop, the dressing is by the left troops of each half squadron.

S. 180. (b) *From Line on the Move.*

The command will be *Form Column of Half Squadrons*, or *Form Column of Half Squadrons from the Right (or Left)* and the formation will be done the same as from line halted.

S. 181. (c) *From Squadron Column Halted.*

<p><i>On the Left</i> (or <i>Right</i>) <i>Form</i>. <i>Column of</i> <i>Half</i> <i>Squadrons</i> <i>Walk—</i> <i>March.</i></p>	}	<p>On the word <i>March</i>, the squadron moves off, the 2nd and 4th troop leaders give the command, <i>Troop, Left (or Right) Incline—Trot</i>, and when opposite their places on the left of the 1st and 3rd troops they give <i>Troop, Right (or Left)—Incline</i>, followed on nearing the alignment by <i>Troop—Walk</i>; the 3rd troop leader gives the command <i>Troop—Trot</i>, and closes to troop distance from the 1st troop.</p>
---	---	---

S. 182. (d) *From Squadron Column on the Move.*

<p><i>On the Left</i> (or <i>Right</i>) <i>Form</i> <i>Column</i> <i>of Half</i> <i>Squadrons.</i></p>	}	<p>On the word <i>Column</i>, the 2nd and 4th troop leaders will give the command, <i>Troop, Left (or Right)—Incline, Trot</i>, and form on the left (or right) of the 1st and 3rd troops, the 3rd troop leader will give the command, <i>Troop—Trot</i>, followed, when at the proper distance, from the 1st troop by the command, <i>Troop—Walk</i>.</p>
--	---	--

S. 183. (e) *From Column of Sections.*

On the Left  
or Right)  
Form  
Column  
of Half  
Squadrons.

Each troop leader gives the command *Form—Troop*, and then proceeds as in forming from Squadron Column.

## FORMATION OF LINE.

S. 184. (a) *From Squadron Column Halted.*

Form  
Squadron  
Walk—  
March.

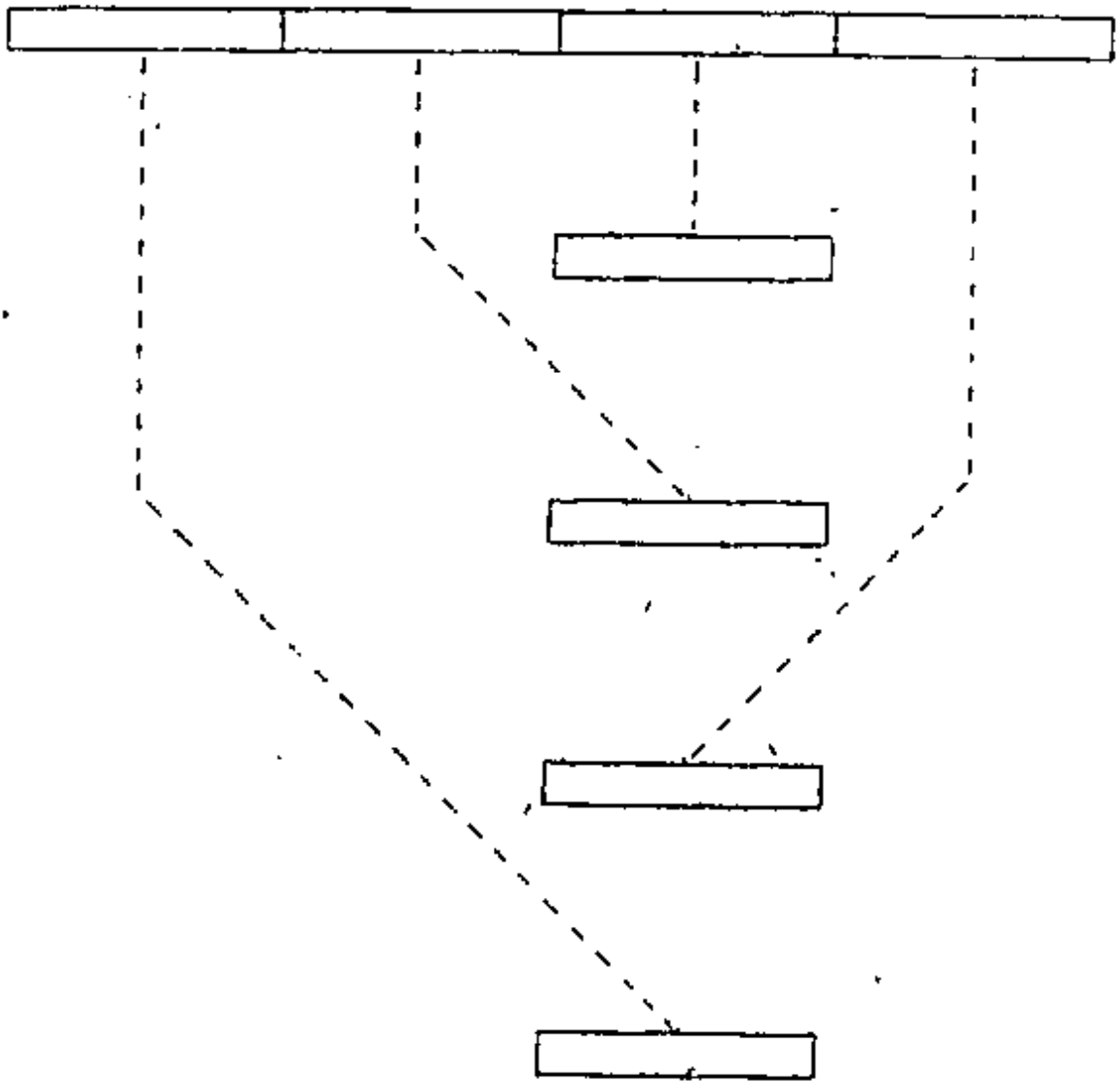
On the command *March* the squadron will advance, the 2nd and 4th troop leaders will then at once give the command, *Troop, Left Incline—Trot*, and each in succession will form on the left of the leading troop by giving the command, *Troop, Right—Incline*, when opposite their places, followed on nearing the alignment by *Troop—Walk*. The 3rd troop will form on the right of the 1st troop in a similar way.

S. 185. (b) *From Squadron Column on the move.*

Form—  
Squadron.

On the word *Squadron* the 3rd troop leader will give the command *Troop, Right—Incline, Trot*, followed by *Troop, Left—Incline*, when it arrives opposite, and *Walk* when about one horse's length in rear of its place in the alignment. The 2nd and 4th leaders will act in a similar way, and form on the left of the leading troop.

Line may also be formed on the right or left of the leading troop by giving the command, *On the Right (or Left) Form—Squadron.*



Line from Squadron Column.

S. 186. (c) *From Column of Half Squadrons halted.*

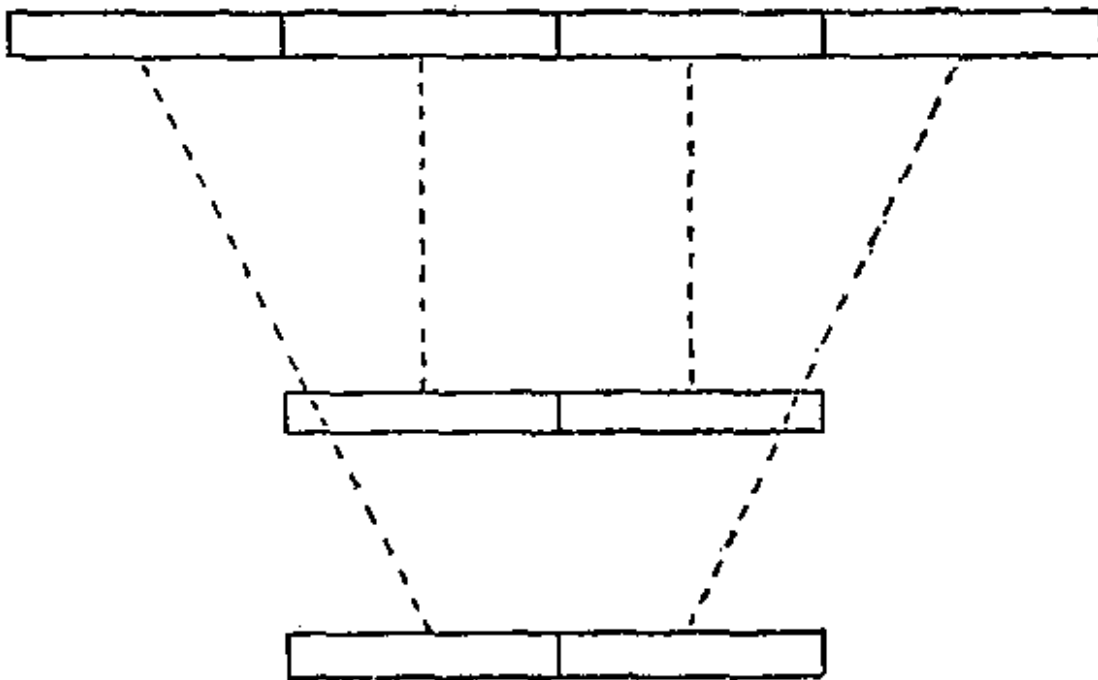
*Form  
Squadron  
Walk—  
March.*

On the word *March* the squadron will advance, the troop leader on the right of the rear half squadron will give the command, *Troop, Right Incline—Trot*, and when opposite his place on the right of the leading half squadron, *Troop, Left—Incline*, followed on nearing the alignment by *Troop—Walk*; the troop leader on the left of the rear half squadron will give the command *Troop, Left—Incline—Trot*, and form in a similar way on the left of the leading half squadron.

Line may also be formed on the right or left of the leading half squadron by the command *On the Right (or Left) Form—Squadron*, in which case the 3rd and 4th troops will by command of their leaders incline in one line and form on the named flank.

S. 187. (d) *From Column of Half Squadrons on the move.*

The command is *Form—Squadron*, or *On the Right (or Left) Form—Squadron*, and the troop leaders proceed as in *Forming from the halt*.



Line from Column of Half Squadrons.



S. 188. (e) *From Column of Sections.*

*Form—Squadron.* { On the word *Squadron* the troop leaders will give the command, *Form—Troop*, and proceed as in forming line from squadron column.

S. 189. *Forming Oblique Line from Line or Squadron Column.*

This can be done by wheeling troops half-right (or left), followed by the command, *On the Right (or Left) Form—Squadron*, in which case the rear troops form on the refused flank of the leading troop, that is to say:—

- (a) If from line, and the troops have been wheeled half-right, the rear troops will be ordered to form on the left of the leading troop and *vice versa*.
- (b) If from squadron column, and the troops have been wheeled half-right, the rear troops will be formed on the right of the leading troop and *vice versa*.

S. 190. *Forming Line to the Halt from Squadron Column.*

*To the Halt Form—Squadron.* { On the word *Squadron* the leading troop moves on three horses' lengths, and is halted, and sat at ease by its leader, the others form on the right and left (or on the right or left if ordered) as before at a *walk*.

## FORMATION OF COLUMN OF SECTIONS.

S. 191. (a) *From Line on the move.*

*Form Sections from the Right (or Left) of Squadron.* { On this command the right section of the line continues to advance, the remaining sections inclining to their right will, in succession, follow and cover.

S. 192. (b) *From Squadron Column on the move.*

*Form*  
*Sections from*  
*the Right*  
 (or *Left*) of  
*Troops.*

On this command the right section of each troop continues to advance, and the remaining sections inclining to their right will, in succession, follow and cover the leading section of their troops.

S. 193. (c) *From Column of Half Squadrons on the move.*

*Form*  
*Sections from*  
*the Right*  
 (or *Left*) of  
*Half*  
*Squadrons.*

On this command the right section of the leading half squadron continues to advance, and the remaining sections in the half squadron inclining to their right will, in succession, follow and cover. The troop leaders of the rear half squadron will give the command *Troop—Halt*, and will advance their troops in sufficient time to connect with the rear section of the troop preceding them.

#### CHANGES OF DIRECTION.

S. 194. (a) *In Line.*

The squadron is never wheeled in line; troops should wheel right or left, and the squadron re-form.

S. 195. (b) *In Squadron Column.*

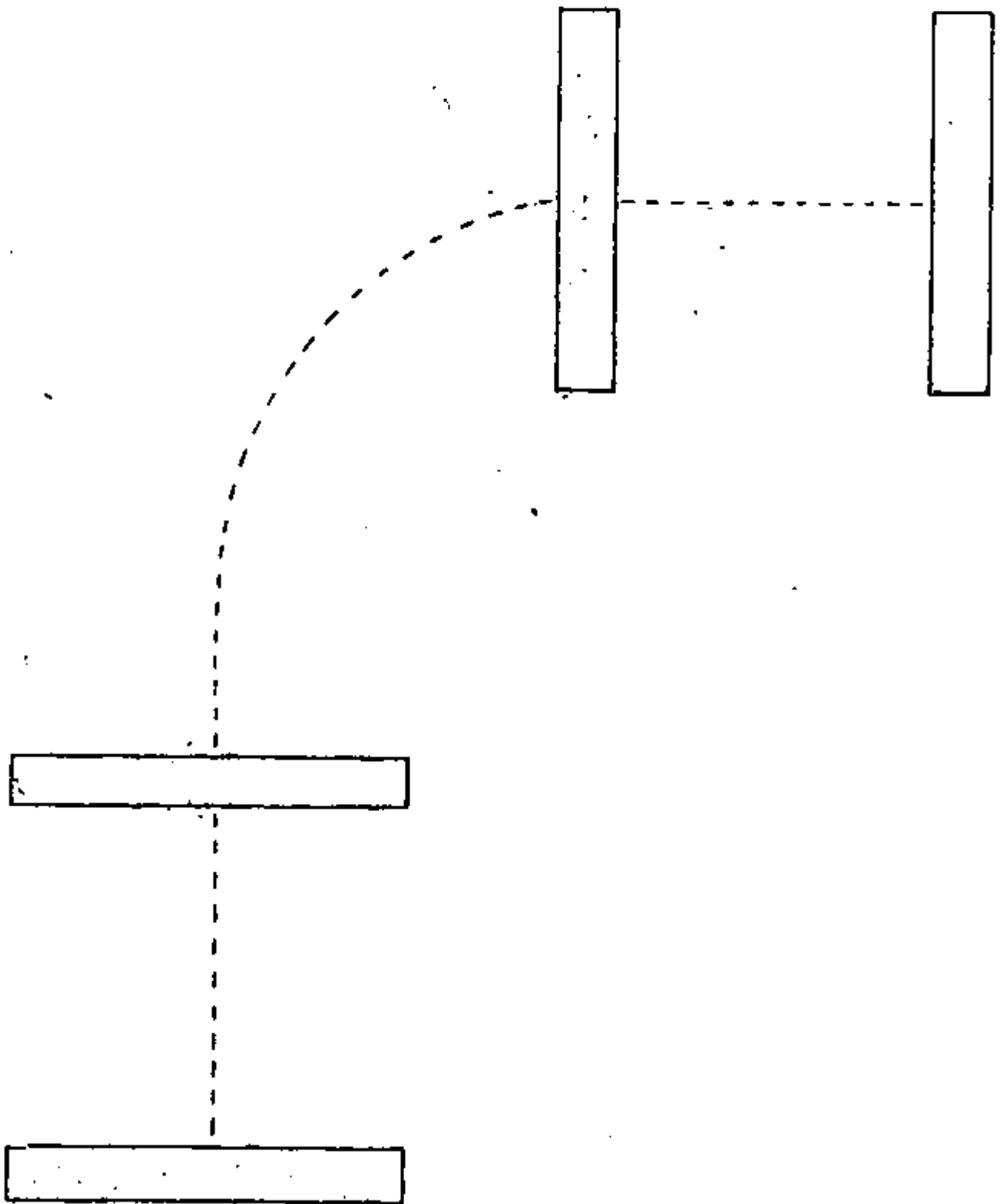
*Walk—March.*—As before.

*Head*  
*Right (or*  
*Left)—*  
*Wheel.*

On the word *Wheel* the 1st troop leader gives the command *Troop, Right—Wheel*, the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th troop leaders give the same commands when they arrive at the wheeling point. See Plate.

If desired to change at less than  $\frac{1}{4}$ -circle, the squadron leader gives the command *For-ward*, when the 1st troop is at the angle he wishes the change made, the 1st troop leader instantly gives the command, *Troop For-ward*, and the others in succession give similar orders, after wheeling the required angle.

The Squadron Column should also be practised in changing its head by the command *Head ½-Right* (or *Left*), *i.e.*, wheeling.



S. 196. (c) *In Column of Half Squadrons.*

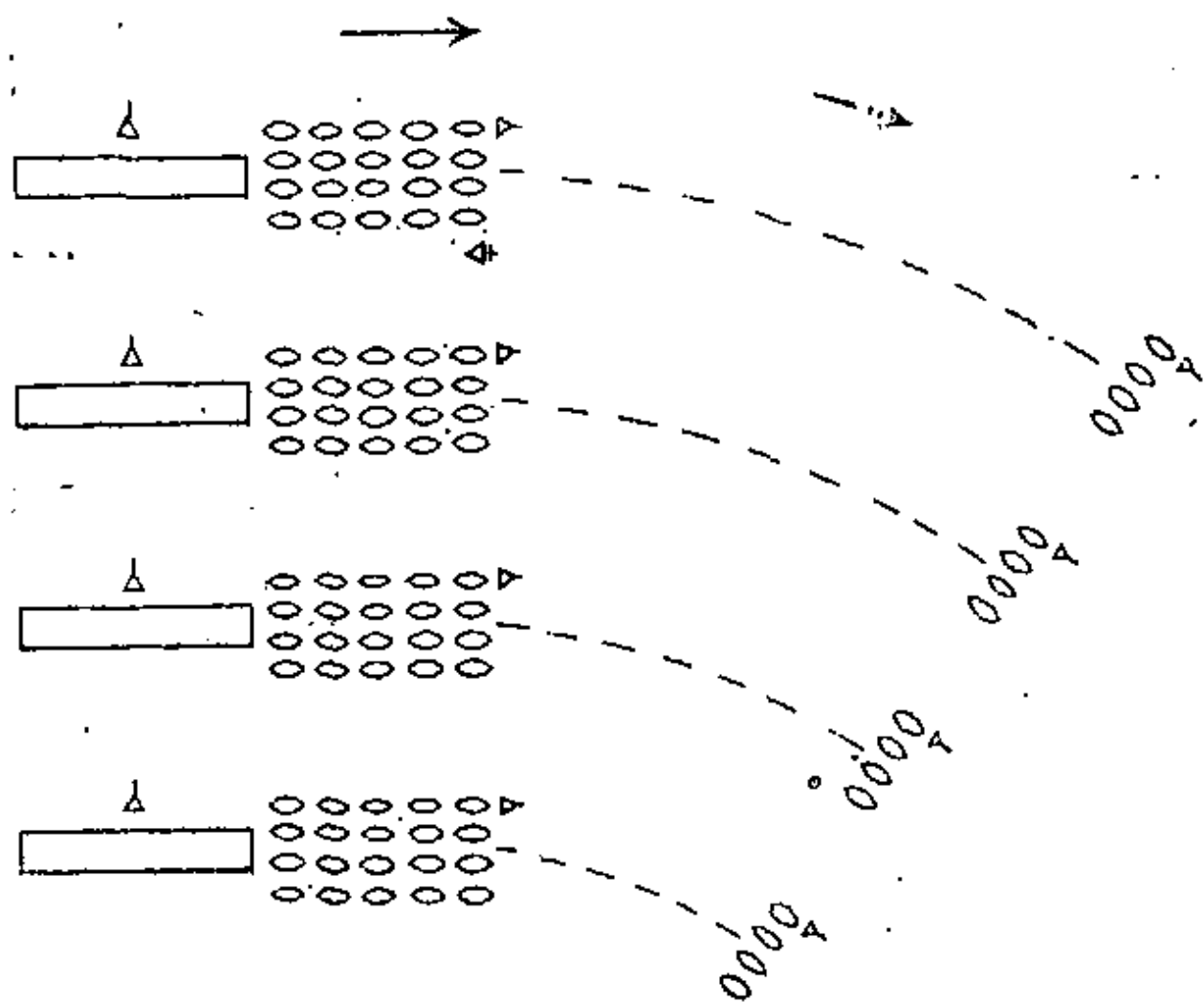
Changes of direction in this formation are not to be made. The troops should wheel to either hand, which will form the column of half squadrons in the new direction.

S. 197. (d) *In Column of Sections.*

Head  
Right (or Left) } On the word *Wheel* the leading section wheels  
—Wheel. } in the required direction, and the remainder do  
likewise in succession.

S. 198. (e) *Squadron Column Marching to a Flank in Sections changing direction.*

Squadron  
Right (or  
Left)— } On the word *Wheel* the leading sections of troops  
Wheel. } will wheel as one line, the remaining sections fol-  
lowing and covering their respective leading sec-  
tions.



[ S. 199. *Squadron in Column of Sections wheeling the Head of Troops.*

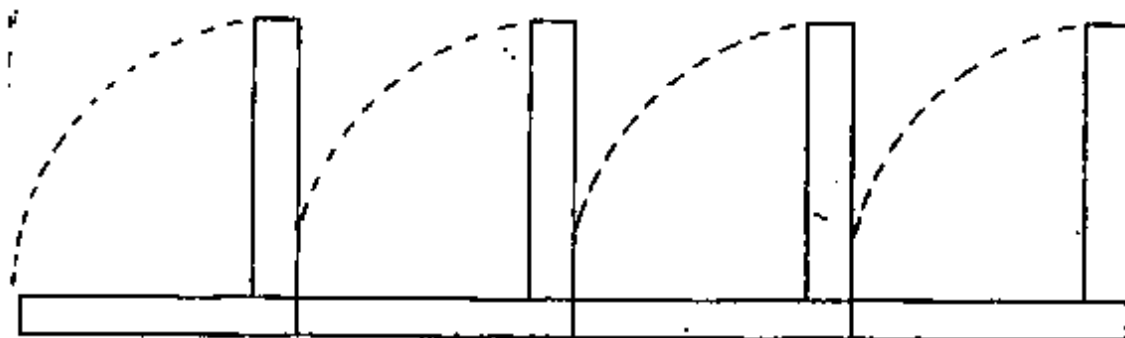
[ *Heads of Troops Right (or Left) —Wheel.* { On the word *Wheel* each troop changes its direction, and the troop leaders place themselves one horse's length in front of their leading sections.

MARCHING TO A FLANK.

S. 200. (a) *From Line.*

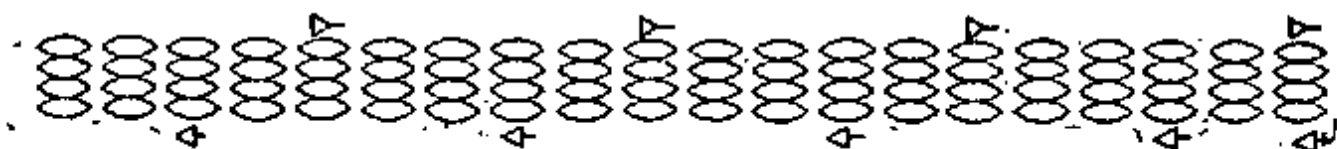
The squadron may be moved to a flank—

- (1) In squadron column, by the command *Troops Right (or Left) —Wheel.*



NOTE.—When stationary, the command will be *Troops Right (or Left) Wheel, Walk—March.* If required to be done to the halt, the command will be “*To the Halt, &c.*”

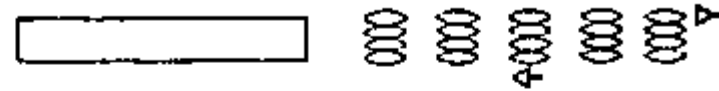
- (2) In Column of Sections, by the command *Sections—Right (or Left)* in which case each troop leader place himself on the inner flank of, and, in line with, the leading section of his troop.



S. 201. (b) *From Squadron Column.*

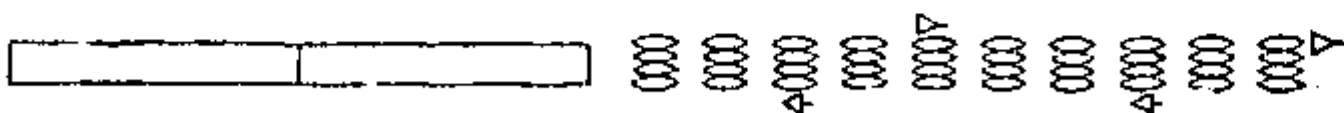
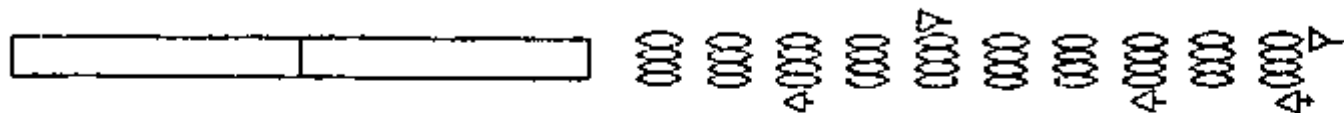
The squadron is moved to a flank by the command *Sections—Right (or Left).* In this case each troop leader places himself one horse's length in front of No. 4 of the leading section

if *Sections—Left* he is one horse's length in front of No. 1),  
*e.*, No. 4 or No. 1, as the case may be, follows his troop leader.



S. 202. (c) *From Column of Half Squadrons.*

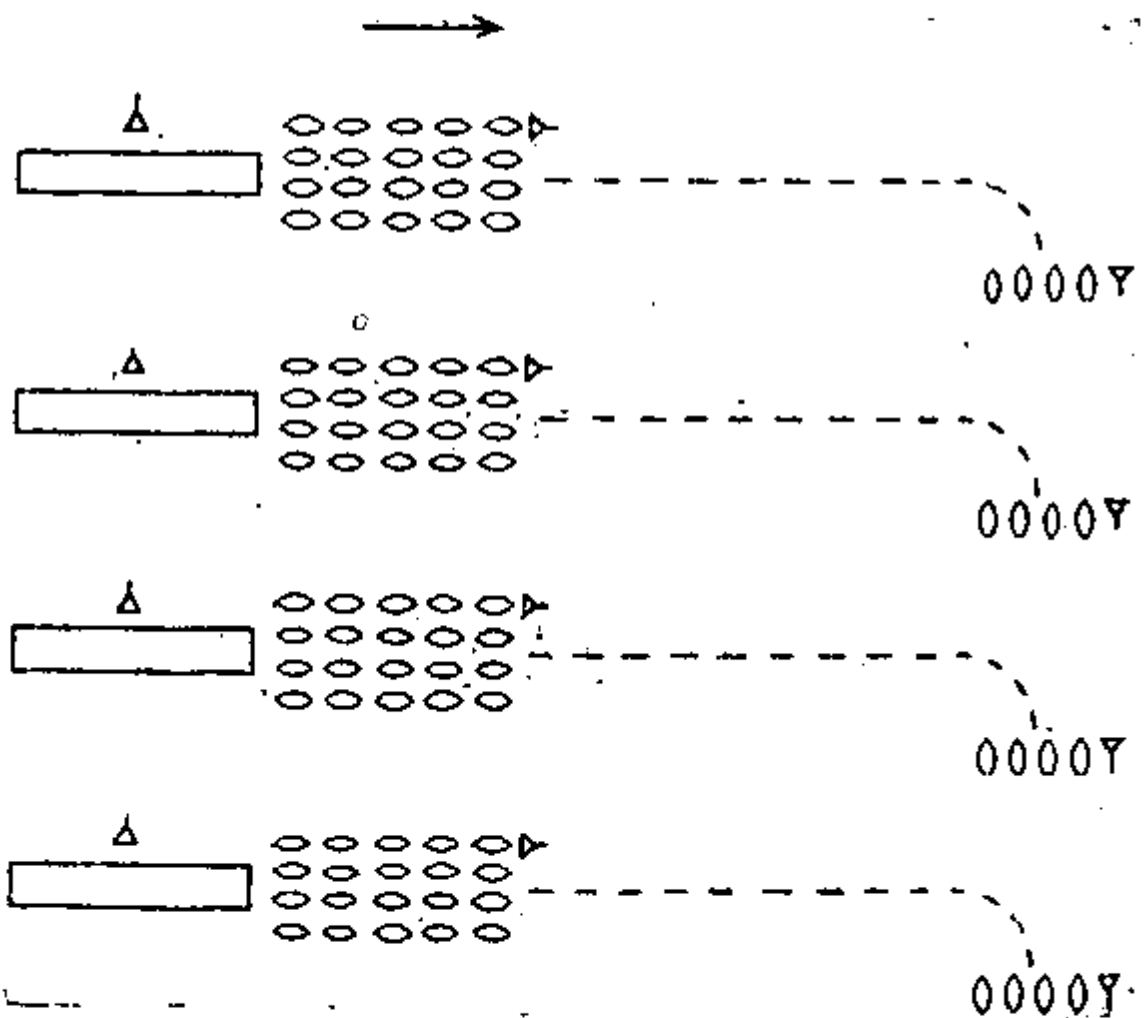
The squadron is moved to a flank by the command *Sections—Right* (or *Left*), and the leading troop leaders of each half-squadron place themselves one horse's length in front of their first section, and the leaders of the troops following them march in line with, and on the inner flank of, their leading sections.



S. 203. *Squadron Column Marching to a Flank in Section and Forming Column of Sections.*

Heads  
of Troops  
Right—  
(or Left)  
Wheel.

On the word *Wheel* each troop changes its direction, and the leader moves to the inner flank of his leading section.



## ECHELON.

S. 204. *Advancing in Echelon from Line halted.*

Echelon  
Troops  
From the  
Right  
(or Left).

The leader of the 1st troop will give the command *Walk—March*, and when it reaches wheeling distance from the 2nd troop, the 2nd troop leader will give the command, *Troop, Walk—March*, and direct the marching of his troop, so that the right hand man is at column distance from, also in rear and on the left of, the left-hand man of the leading troop. The 3rd and 4th troops will do likewise in succession.

S. 205. *Forming Echelon from Line Moving.*

Form  
Echelon of  
Troops  
From the  
Right.

On this command, the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd troop leaders will give the command, *Troop—Trot* (or *Gallop*), followed by *Troop—Walk* (or *Trot*), when each has reached its proper distance from the troop in rear of it.

This can also be done from the left by the command, *Echelon Troops from the Left*, when the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th troop leaders will increase the pace, and each in succession move to column distance from the troop in rear and on the right of it.

S. 206. *Forming Line on the Move from Echelon.*

Form—  
Squadron.

On the word *Squadron* the rear troops take the next increased pace by their leader's command, and resume the original pace (also by command) when in line with the leading troop.

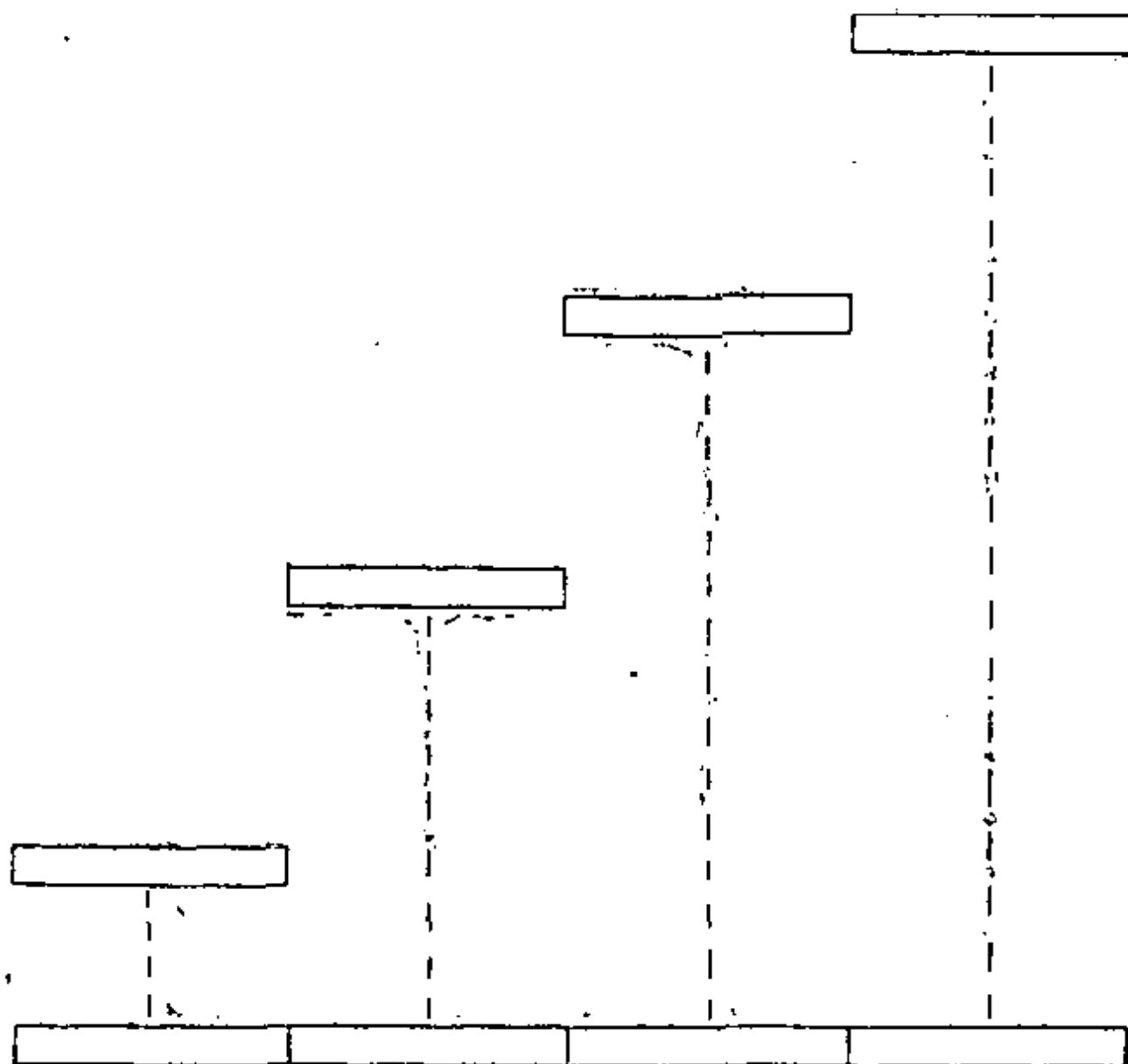
The squadron may be formed to the halt on the command *To the halt, Form—Squadron*. The leading troop moves forward three horses' lengths and halts, the rear troops forming on it. If it is required to form on any named troop in rear, the command will be *To the halt, on the . . . troop, Form—Squadron*, in which case the troops in front will go *Sections—About*, by



command of their leaders, and after being led in rear of the new alignment *Sections About—Halt, Dress up, Sit at Ease.*

In echelon the leading body is responsible for the pace and direction, and the rear bodies for the intervals and distances.

The direction is changed by the command, *Troops—Right (or Left) Wheel.*



S. 207. *Moving through Rough Country.*

Advances through rough, broken, bush, or rocky country can be made by advancing in single files from the right of sections. It may be done by the command, *Single files from the right of*

*Sections*, and the original formation resumed by the command, *Form—Sections*, or it may be done by giving the whistle sounds for *Rally*, the same signal being used to re-form the sections.

### S. 208. SHELL FORMATION.

1. This movement is valuable when marching within the dangerous zone of artillery fire.
2. It admits of both the front being rapidly expanded and the depth between troops increased without reducing the flexibility of the squadron.
3. It tends to considerably minimize casualties.
4. It furnishes four complete and successive lines of troops available to support or reinforce each other quickly.

#### S. 209. (a) *From Squadron Column moving.*

*Shell—*  
*Formation.* { On the word *Formation* each troop will extend from its centre by single files to about 3 yards interval, and occupy a frontage equivalent to that taken up by the whole squadron when in line.

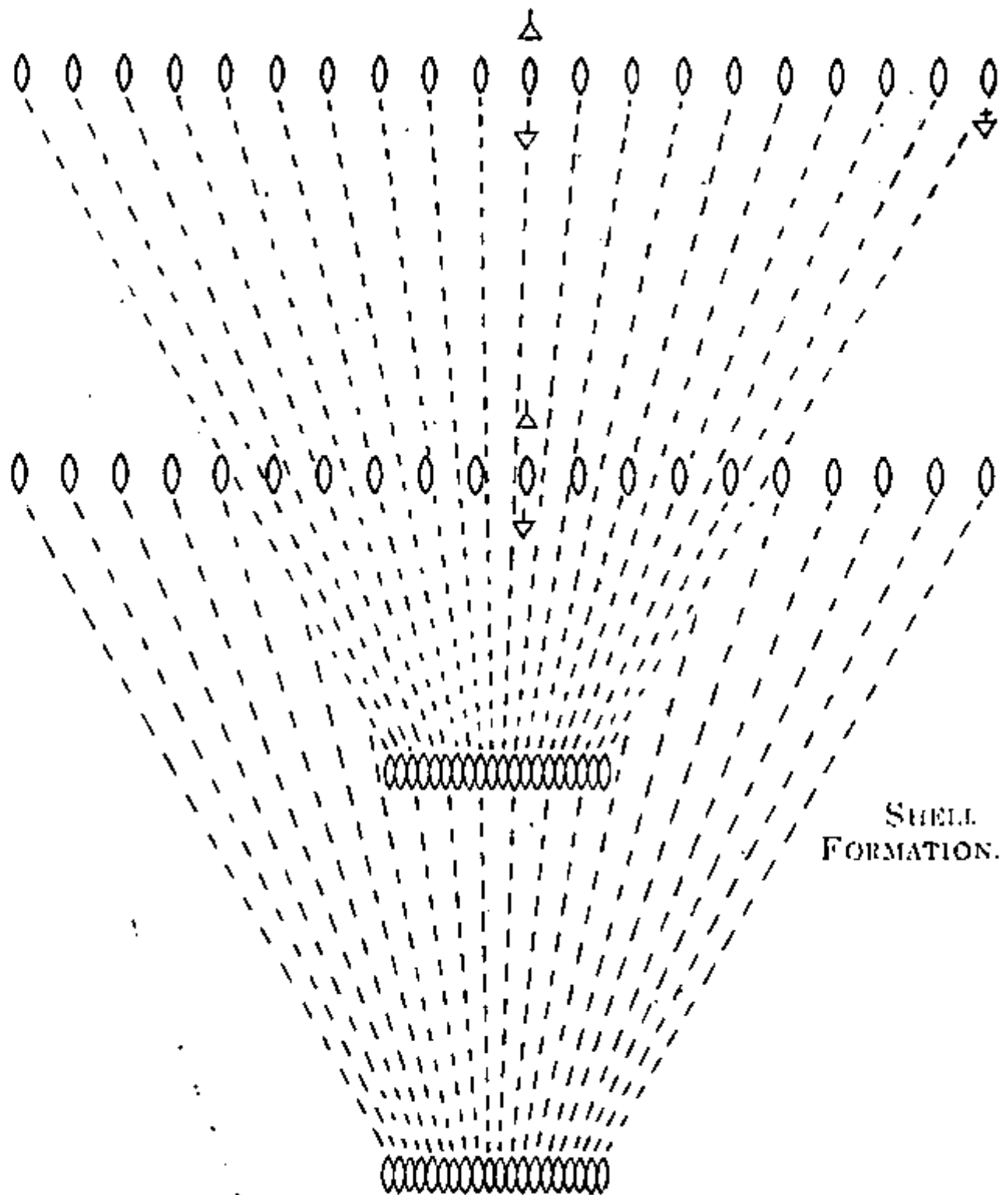
This interval can be increased when squadrons are working singly.

If necessary, the distance between troops is increased by the command.....*Paces between Troops*, when the troops in front will get the named distance (and intervals at one and the same time) from the rear troop, by following their leader at the increased pace, and resuming the former pace in due course. Rerefiles retain their relative positions in rear of troops.

#### S. 210. (b) *From Squadron Column halted.*

*Shell*  
*Formation*  
*Walk—*  
*March.* { On the word *March* the whole squadron advances and extends to about 3 yards interval between single files. If the distance between troops is to be increased the leading troops will follow their leader at a *trot*, and resume the *walk* when they reach the named distance.

Plate showing a squadron with 80 men in the ranks, that is each troop of 20 men covering a frontage of 80 yards. (19 intervals of about 3 yards each = 60 yards, plus 20 yards for the 20 horses; total, 80 yards.)



S. 211. *To Close from Shell Formation.*

The squadron will close by signal or command, the troops in rear conforming in this respect to the movement of the leading troop. If the squadron is halted, troops will close at the trot, otherwise at the next increased pace. If column distance has been increased, the troops in rear will close, whilst they will continue to move forward until they arrive at column distance. If the leading troop has been halted, the troops in rear will move up to column distance at the trot after closing, otherwise they will move up at the next increased pace.

## S. 212. GROUND SCOUTS.

Although every man in the squadron is to be instructed in the duties of ground scouts, a sufficient number of men must be selected for their superior intelligence and good horsemanship, and especially trained as the scouts of the squadron.

The duties of scouts are to ascertain whether the ground in the immediate vicinity, in front of the squadron (and on its flanks in column), is suitable for mounted troops, to point out obstacles, and to indicate the best points of passage.

Scouts must be careful not to unnecessarily expose themselves to view on high ground, or against the sky line.

Single troops should always throw out scouts in difficult ground; a squadron should never manœuvre over unknown or broken ground without being preceded by a ground scout.

The number of scouts employed, and the distance to which they are to go out, must depend upon the nature of the ground and the rapidity with which the body is moving; they must

not, however, be more numerous than is absolutely necessary and must be sufficiently in advance to give ample warning of obstacles, but never out of sight of their squadrons.

Under ordinary circumstances, one man per squadron is sufficient, and, as a general rule, ground scouts should not be less than 200, nor more than 500 yards at the outside, away from their squadrons; if on a flank, they must know what sort of ground intervenes between them and the column.

Squadron commanders are responsible (without any order) that one scout from each squadron gallops out to a point at a suitable distance, as explained above, in front of the centre of his squadron if in line, or line of squadron columns, or opposite the exposed flank of the squadron; in the latter case, also, the leading squadron sends out an additional scout ahead of the column. After reaching this point, each scout conforms as far as possible to the pace and to any change of direction of his squadron.

When moving fast over very difficult ground, two scouts may with advantage be sent out by each squadron; one man can then halt to point out a passage, while the other explores the nature of the ground.

The following signals are to be used by ground scouts:—If the ground is boggy, or otherwise impassable, they will halt and raise their rifles perpendicularly; they will then make for whatever point appears practicable, pointing towards it with the rifle.

If the ground within view in front and on either side is quite impracticable, a scout will face his squadron, raise his rifle and ride in to the squadron to report.

As the duties of ground scouts in broken ground take a good deal out of the horses, squadron commanders will be careful to equalize the work among their scouts, and to save all unnecessary galloping; thus, if a line retires over ground not previously traversed, fresh scouts will be sent out to the new front, and those already out will rejoin their squadron.

## REGIMENTAL DRILL.

### S. 213. *General Instructions.*

The following principles should be carefully observed:—

1. Formations should be as simple as possible, and units moved to their positions by the shortest route.
2. That, although the relative position of troops and squadrons may often be changed, the troops of each squadron must be kept together.
3. The Adjutant acts as a guide for direction and pace.

The second squadron will be the squadron of direction unless otherwise ordered.

The troop of direction will be—

In Line and in Double Echelon, the left troop of the squadron of direction.

In Line of Columns of Half Squadrons, the left troop of the leading half squadron of the troop of direction,  
and

In Line of Squadron Columns, and in Mass, the leading troop of the squadron of direction.

4. The flank squadron on the hand towards which "changes of direction" or movements in "echelon," or "inclining" are made is the directing body.

5. In line formations (except Echelon) the movements are made *from* and *on* the centre troop (or centre squadron, if in line of squadron columns), unless otherwise ordered, and in column, *on* the leading squadron, and the squadron to which the troop belongs (or the squadron) is called the "base squadron."

In formations to COLUMN *from* LINE, LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS, or MASS, the 3rd squadron forms in rear of the 2nd, followed by the 1st and 4th, unless otherwise ordered.

6. In formations to LINE, LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS, or MASS from COLUMN, the 2nd and 4th squadrons form on the left, and the 3rd squadron on the right, of the leading one.

7. In formations *To the halt* the pace is not increased, except that, when squadrons are first formed before being brought on to a new alignment, the rear troops form at an increased pace.

8. If an increased pace is taken to bring a unit on to a new alignment, it will be ordered to resume the former pace on reaching the serrefile rank of the body formed on.

9. In movements from column of sections, squadron leader will first form troops, and then complete the formation, except in forming line to a flank, when sections may wheel.

10. The command *Head, Half-Right* means the head of the body will make a *half-right wheel*, and then move on at that angle; but squadrons should not be formed until the troops are properly covered.

11. The regimental leader, before giving a command or signal, should, if possible, place himself on the right or left front of the flank to which he intends making the movement.

12. Squadron leaders repeat Commanding Officer's cautionary commands before giving the executive commands to their squadrons; but they do not repeat his executive commands unless required by circumstances to do so. In ceremonial drill, squadron leaders do not repeat words of command.

13. The Commanding Officer's cautionary command is shown marginally in italics, and his executive commands in block letters.

14. In formations *To the halt*, the squadron on which the movement is to be made will advance its depth before halting, unless otherwise laid down.

15. In forming up on markers, the troop leader whose duty it is to form on his units' marker will be in line with and on the marker's right, and facing the opposite way.

### POST OF OFFICERS, ETC.

#### S. 214. *Commanding Officer.*

*Manœuvre.*—Where he can best superintend and make his commands heard or signals seen.

*Inspection.*—Eight yards in advance of the centre of the squadron leaders.



*When Personally Leading.*—Twenty yards in advance of the squadron leaders, and in front of the directing point.

	2nd in Command.	Adjutant.	R.S. Major.			
Line Line of S.C. .. Col. of Sds. ..	In line with Sqdn. Ldrs. (or 1st S.L.), and two horses' lengths interval (6 paces on foot) on right of right-hand man	In line with T. Ldrs. (or 1st T.L.) covering 2nd in command	In line with right-hand man, covering Adjutant			
Col. of Tps. .. " " Secs. ..				2 horses' lengths in front of 1st Sqdn. Leader	3 horses' lengths behind right-hand man of rear unit	1 horse's length in front Adjutant
Manœuvre ..				Assist C.O., and supervise the outer flank in changes of front, position, or direction	15 yards in front of the directing troop leader	On right of, and in line with, directing Troop leader

### S. 215. FORMATIONS OF THE REGIMENT.

The regiment is formed in—

Line.

Line of Squadron Columns.

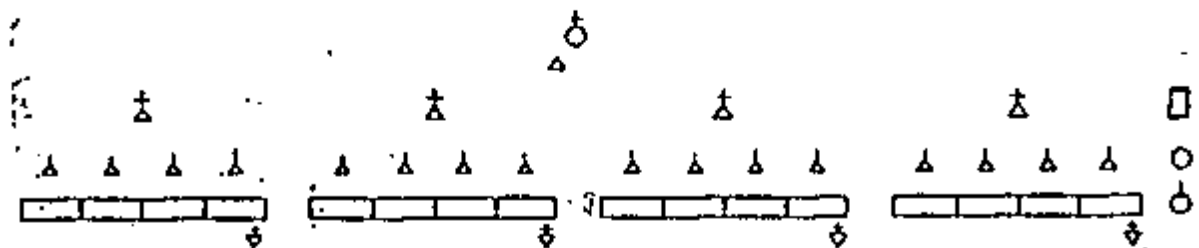
Mass.

Column of Troops.

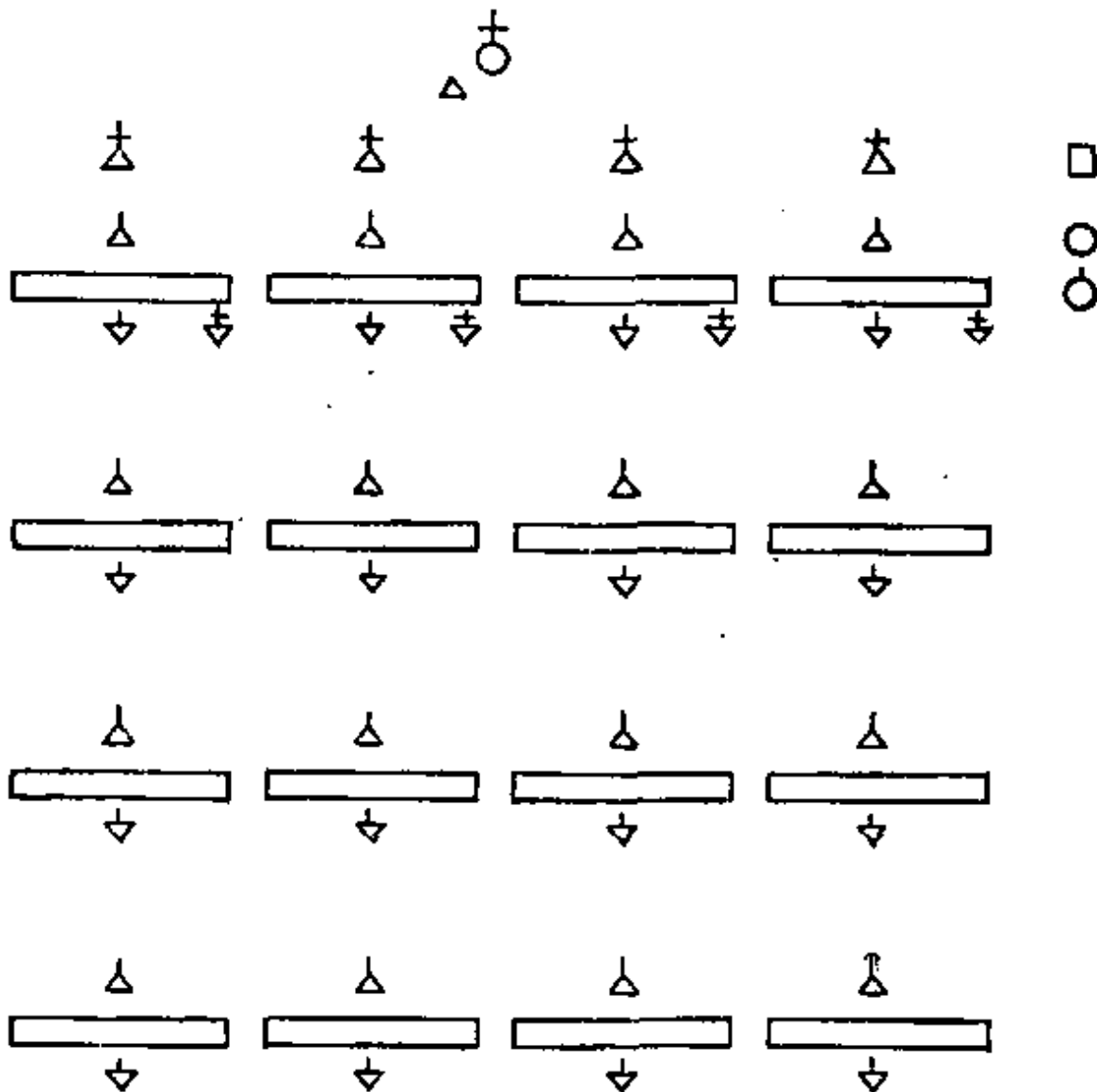
Column of Squadrons.

Echelon.

(a) *Line.*—Eight yards' interval between squadrons.

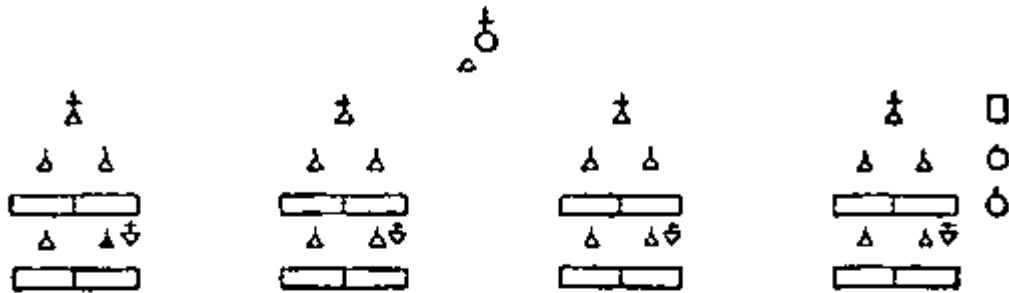


(b) *Mass.*—Line of Sqdn. Cols. closed to 2 horses' lengths interval.



(c) *Line of Squadron Columns.*—Each Squadron in Squadron column with an interval between them equal to the frontage of all their rear troops plus 8 yards.

(d) *Line of Column of Half Squadrons.*—Deploying interval plus 8 yards between squadrons.



## REGIMENTAL MOVEMENTS.

### S. 216. *Explanatory.*

The following movements are given as a guide for the drill of the regiment mounted, and deal with formations *at the Walk—March* unless otherwise stated. It is to be distinctly understood that they are only to be taken as *examples*, and do not furnish an exhaustive list of the movements a regiment is capable of executing:—

### S. 217. THE REGIMENT MARCHING.

The regimental leader's caution is *The regiment will advance.* Squadron leaders repeat this caution and the adjutant places himself 15 yards in front of the directing unit. The executive command WALK—MARCH is then given by the regimental leader.

### S. 218. (a) *In Line.*

On the word MARCH each squadron advances, the troop leaders keeping in line with, and maintaining their intervals from, the leader next them on the dressing hand.

S. 219. (b) *In Line of Squadron Columns*, (c) *In Mass*.

On the word MARCH each squadron advances, the 1st troop leaders of each squadron keep in line with, and maintain their intervals from, the leader next them on the dressing hand, the other leaders cover the leader next in front of them at the proper distance.

S. 220. (d) *In Column of Troops*.

On the word MARCH every troop advances, its leader maintaining the distance and covering from the leader next in front of him, the leaders of the 1st troops in the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th squadrons being careful to preserve a distance equal to their frontage (plus 8 yards) from the rear troop of the preceding squadron.

S. 221. (e) *In Column of Squadrons*.

On the word MARCH each squadron advances and dresses by its 2nd troop, the leaders of which in the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th squadrons, cover the directing leader of the squadron next in front.

## S. 222. MACHINE GUNS.

Machine guns will generally form and march in rear of their regiments.

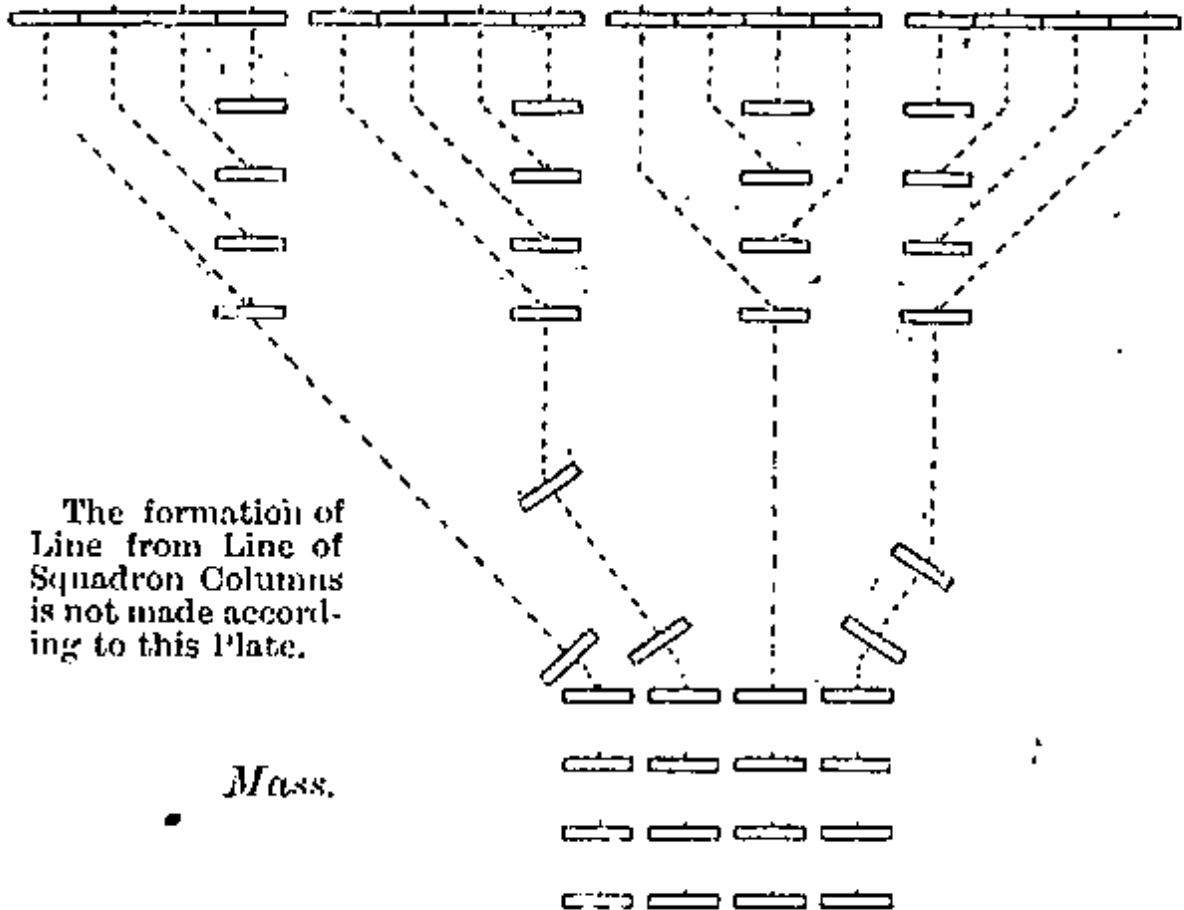
FORMATION OF LINE.

S. 223. (a) *From Line of Squadron Columns.*

Each squadron leader gives the command *Form—Squadron.*

S. 224. (b) *From Mass.*

*Form—Line.* The 1st squadron leader gives the command *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right—Trot*, and when opposite the left of his new place *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left*, followed by *On the Right Form—Squadron.* The 2nd squadron leader gives the command *Form—Squadron.* The 3rd and 4th give *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left—Trot*, followed, when their leading troops are behind the place where the right of the squadron will be, by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*, and then *On the Left Form—Squadron.*



The formation of Line from Line of Squadron Columns is not made according to this Plate.

*Mass.*

If this movement is done to the halt, the 1st, 3rd, and 4th squadrons will reach their places in rear of the new alignment by a square movement in sections, and then form squadron on the right and left respectively.

S. 225. (c) *From Column of Troops.*

The 1st squadron leader gives the command *Form—Squadron*, the 2nd squadron leader gives *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left—Trot*, followed, when the right-hand man of the leading troop is opposite his place in the new alignment, by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*, and then, *On the Left Form—Squadron*; the 3rd gives *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right—Trot*, and when the left-hand man of the leading troop is opposite his place, *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left*, followed by *On the Right Form—Squadron*. The 4th squadron forms in the same way as the 2nd, and on its left.

S. 226. (d) *From Column of Squadrons.*

The 2nd and 4th squadron leaders give *Squadron Form—Column—From the Left*, the 3rd gives *Squadron Form—Column—From the Right*, and they each then proceed as in forming from column of troops.

If done *To the halt*, the 2nd and 4th squadron leaders give *Sections—Left*, and when opposite their places in the new alignment *Sections—Right*. The 3rd squadron leader gives *Sections—Right*, and when opposite his place *Sections—Left*. If *from* and *to* the halt, the regimental leader gives the cautionary command *To the Halt, Form—Line*; the 2nd and 4th squadron leaders give *Sections—Left*, the 3rd gives *Sections—Right*, and on the regimental leader's executive command, WALK—MARCH, the 1st squadron moves up three horse's lengths, and the others form on its right and left.

## FORMATION OF LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS.

S. 227. (a) *From Mass.*

*Line of Squadron—Columns.* { The 1st squadron leader gives the command *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right—Trot*, followed when at deploying interval by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left*. The 3rd and 4th give *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left—Trot*, followed at deploying interval by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*.

If done *To the Halt*, the 1st squadron leader gives *Sections—Right* (the 3rd and 4th give *Sections—Left*), followed when at deploying interval by *Sections—Left* (or *Right*). If done *from and to the halt*, the regimental leader's cautionary command is *To the Halt, Line of Squadron Columns*. The squadron leaders give *Sections* right and left to their troops as before, and then remain steady until regimental leader's executive command **WALK—MARCH**, when the 2nd advances three horses' lengths and halts, the others proceed as before.

S. 228. (b) *From Column of Troops.*

*Line of Squadron—Columns.* { The 2nd and 4th squadron leaders give the command *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left—Trot*, followed when at deploying interval by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*. The 3rd gives *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right—Trot*, followed at deploying interval by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left*.

In forming to a flank the regimental leader's command is **HEADS OF SQUADRONS RIGHT** (or **LEFT**) **WHEEL**.

S. 229. (c) *From Column of Squadrons.*

The 1st and 3rd squadron leaders give the command *Squadron Column From the Right*. The 2nd and 4th squadron leaders give *Squadron Column From the Left*. The 1st squadron moves straight on. The 2nd squadron changes its head slightly and moves up at the trot to deploying interval on the left of the leading squadron. The 3rd squadron gives *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right—Trot*, followed when at deploying interval by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left*. The 4th gives *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left—Trot*, followed when at deploying interval by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*.

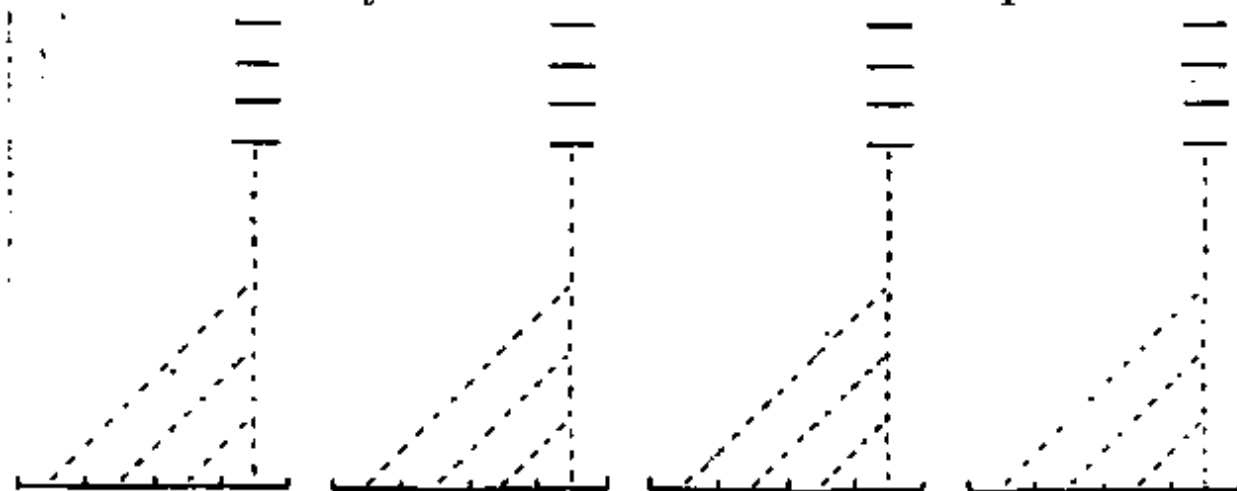
Line of  
Squadron—  
Columns.

In forming to a flank *From Column of Squadrons*, the regimental leader's command is TROOPS, RIGHT (or LEFT)—WHEEL.

S. 230. (d) *From Line.*

Line of Squadron  
Columns from the  
Right (or Left) or  
Line of Squadron  
—Columns.

On the command *From the Right*, the right troops of each squadron will move forward, followed in succession by the 2nd, 3rd and 4th troops. If the command is *Squadron—Column*, the 2nd troops of each squadron will move forward, followed in succession by the 3rd, 1st, and 4th troops.



LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS FROM THE RIGHT OF SQUADRONS.



## FORMATION OF MASS.

S. 231. (a) *From Line of Squadron Columns.*

The 2nd squadron continues to move forward. The 1st gives *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left—Trot*, followed (when his squadron is opposite its place) by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*. The 3rd and 4th change their heads  $\frac{1}{2}$  right, and then  $\frac{1}{2}$  left when opposite their places.

If this is done *To the Halt*, the 1st squadron leader gives the command *Sections—Left*, the 3rd and 4th give *Sections—Right*, and each forms on the 2nd squadron by giving *Sections Right* (or *Left*) as the case may be. If done *from and to the halt*, the squadron leaders wheel their commands sections right or left, and remain steady until the regimental leader's executive command WALK—MARCH, when they complete the formation.

S. 232. (b) *From Column of Troops.*

The 2nd and 4th squadrons form on the left of, and the 3rd on the right of, the leading squadron by changing the direction of their heads outwards, and then inwards, when opposite their places.

S. 233. (c) *From Column of Squadrons.*

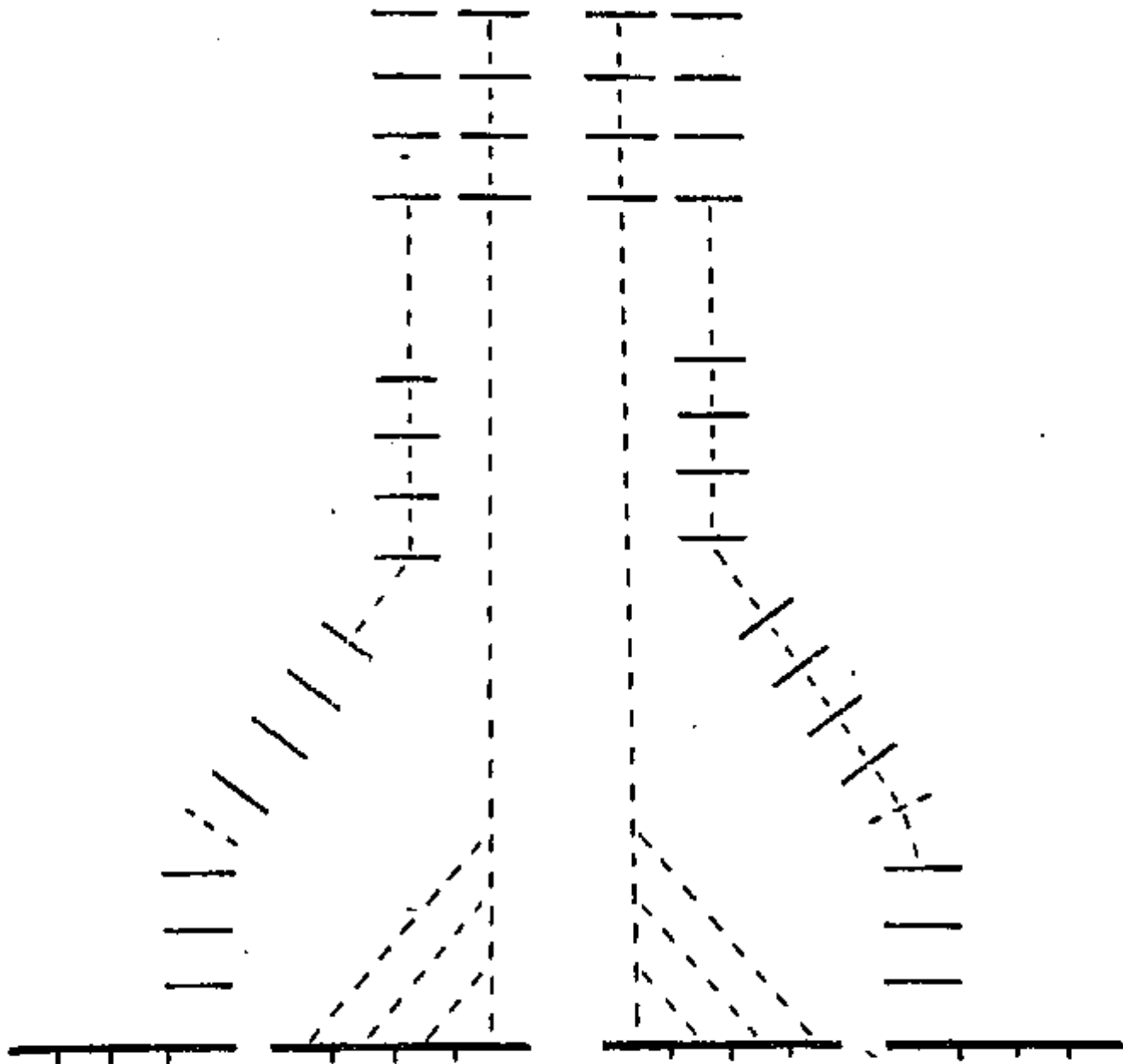
The 1st squadron leader gives the command *Squadron Column from the Right*, and moves straight on. The 2nd squadron leader gives the command, *Squadron Column—Trot*, and moves up on the left of the leading squadron. The 3rd squadron leader gives the command, *Squadron Column from the Right*, and moves up at a trot (changing the head of his squadron slightly) on the right of the leading squadron. The 4th squadron leader gives the command, *Squadron Column from the Left*, and moves up on the left at the trot.

Form  
—Mass

Form  
—Mass.

S. 234. (d) *From Line.*Form  
—Mass.

The 1st and 2nd squadron leaders give the command *Squadron Column from the Left*. The 3rd and 4th give *Squadron Column from the Right*. Then the 1st, 3rd, and 4th squadron leaders give the necessary commands to change their heads on to, and in line with, the 2nd squadron.



## FORMATION OF MASS FROM LINE.

NOTE.—This movement should not be done *To the Halt*. The regimental leader will give the command, *To Halt*, if necessary, when the movement is completed.

## FORMATION OF COLUMN OF TROOPS.

S. 235. (a) *From Column of Squadrons.*

Column of Troops or  
 Column of Troops  
 From the Right (or  
 Left). } On this caution each squadron leader  
 gives the command *Squadron Column*, or  
*Squadron Column from the Right* (or  
*Left*).

S. 236. (b) *From Line.*

Column  
 of  
 Troops. } The 2nd squadron leader gives the command *Squadron Column from the Left*, and moves straight on.  
 The 1st squadron leader gives the command *Squadron Column from the Left*, and changes the head of his squadron to cover the 3rd squadron.  
 The 3rd and 4th squadron leaders give the command *Squadron Column from the Right*. The 3rd squadron follows the 2nd, the 1st follows the 3rd, and the 4th follows the 1st.

This may be done from a flank of the line by the regimental leader's cautionary command, *Column of Troops—From the Right* (or *Left*). Then each squadron leader gives the command *Squadron Column from the Right* (or *Left*). The 1st or 4th squadron moves straight on, the remainder change the heads of their squadrons, and cover in column of troops.

S. 237. (c) *From Line of Squadron Columns.*

Column of Troops. { The 2nd squadron moves straight on. The 1st squadron leader gives the command *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left*, followed, when behind the 3rd squadron, by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*. The 4th squadron changes its head  $\frac{1}{2}$  *Right*, and follows the 1st squadron. The 3rd gives the command *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*, and follows the 2nd squadron.

If this is done from a flank, the regimental leader's cautionary command is *Column of Troops from the Right (or Left)*. Then the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th squadron leaders give the command *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right (or Left)*, followed by *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left (or Right)*, and in succession follow the leading squadron.

S. 238. (d) *From Mass.*

Column of Troops. { Carried out as for forming from Line of Squadron Columns except that the squadrons other than the leading one will be halted until the preceding squadron is clear of their respective flanks.

NOTE.—In all formations *To Column of Troops*, the leading troop leaders of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th squadrons must keep troop-wheeling distance, plus 8 yards, from the rear troop of the squadron in front of them.

## FORMATION OF COLUMN OF SQUADRONS.

S. 239. (a) *From Line.*

Column  
of  
Squad-  
rons. { The 2nd squadron moves straight on. The 1st  
squadron leader gives the command, *Troops,  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left.*  
The 3rd and 4th give *Troops,  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*, and when each  
squadron arrives opposite its new place, the leader will  
give the command to wheel his troops behind, and on  
to, the parallel alignment of the preceding squadron.

This may be done from a flank of the line by the regimental leader giving the caution, *Column of Squadrons from the Right* (or *Left*), when the squadron on the named flank moves forward and the others follow by moving half right or left.

S. 240. (b) *From Line of Squadron Columns.*

Column  
of  
Squad-  
rons. { The 2nd squadron leader gives the command *Form  
Squadron.* The 1st gives *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left.* The 3rd and  
4th give *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*, and when they have respectively  
arrived behind the right and left flanks of the leading  
squadron the 3rd gives *Head  $\frac{1}{2}$  Left*, and on reaching  
column distance from the leading squadron, he gives  
*On the Right Form—Squadron.* The 1st gives *Head  
 $\frac{1}{2}$  Right*, followed when at column distance from the  
3rd by *On the Left Form—Squadron.* The 4th does the  
same as the 3rd, and follows the 1st squadron.

S. 241. (c) *From Mass.*

The 1st, 3rd, and 4th squadron leaders give the command, *Halt.* The 2nd gives *Form—Squadron*, and when it has reached column distance the 3rd squadron leader will give *Walk—March*, followed by *On the Right Form—Squadron*, the 1st and 4th squadrons will move off similarly and form in rear.

S. 242. (d) *From Column of Troops.*

Column of squadrons. } Each squadron leader gives the command, *Form—Squadron.*

## ECHELON.

S. 243. (a) *Advancing from Line Halted.*

Echelon of squadrons. } The 1st squadron leader gives the command, *Walk—March.* The others give *Walk—March* in succession, when at a distance equal to their frontage (plus 8 yards) from the unit preceding them.

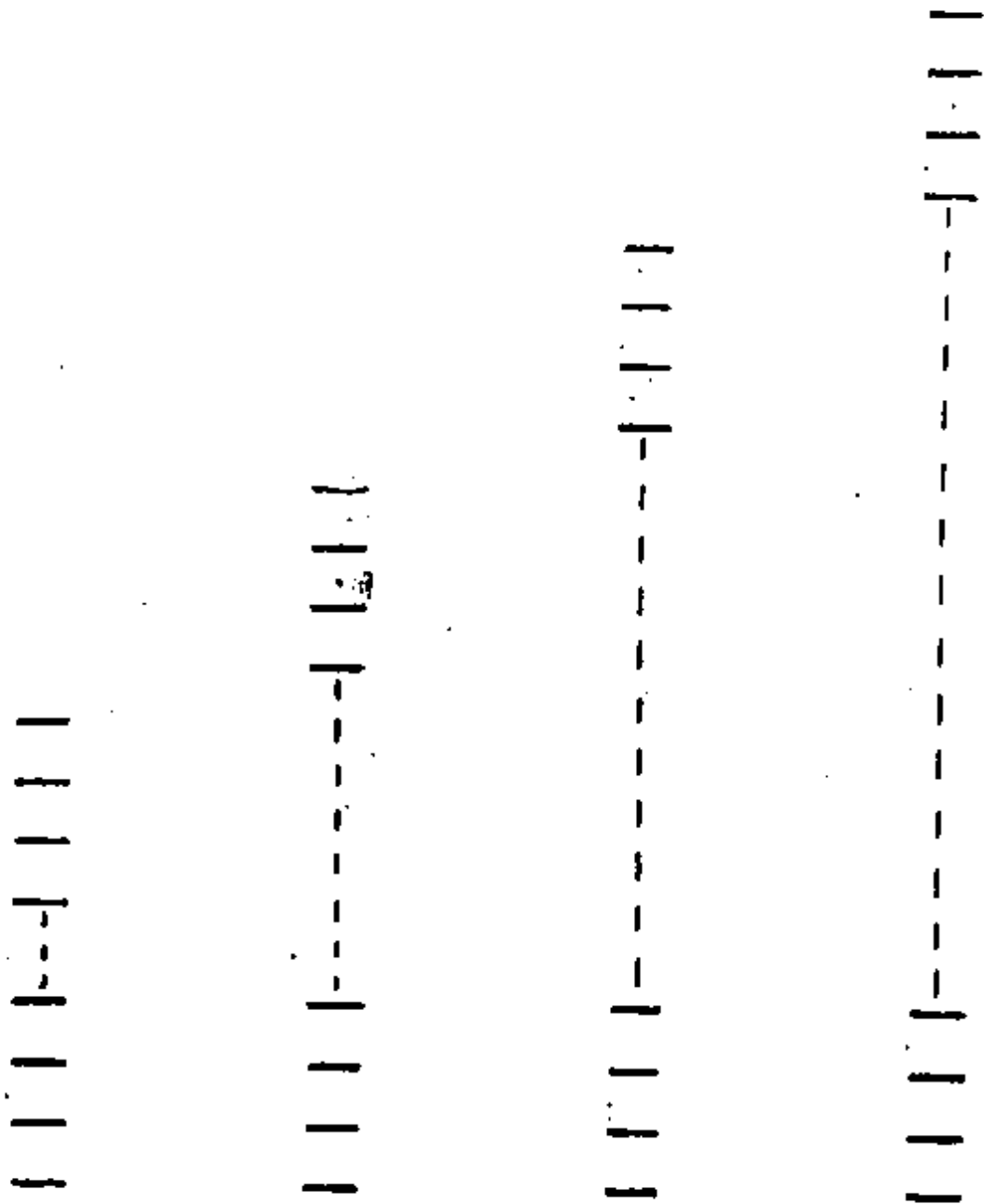
NOTE.—If the command is *Echelon of Squadrons from the Left*, the 4th squadron leader gives the command *Walk—March*, followed by the 3rd, 2nd, and 1st.

S. 244. (b) *Forming from Line Advancing.*

Echelon of Squadrons. } The 1st, 2nd, and 3rd squadron leaders give the command *Trot*, followed by *Walk*, when they reach the proper distance from the unit next in rear.

If the formation is to be made by the left squadron leading, the cautionary command is *Echelon of Squadrons from the Left*, and the 4th, 3rd, and 2nd squadron leaders give the command *Trot*, and get their distances from the 1st, their order being changed.

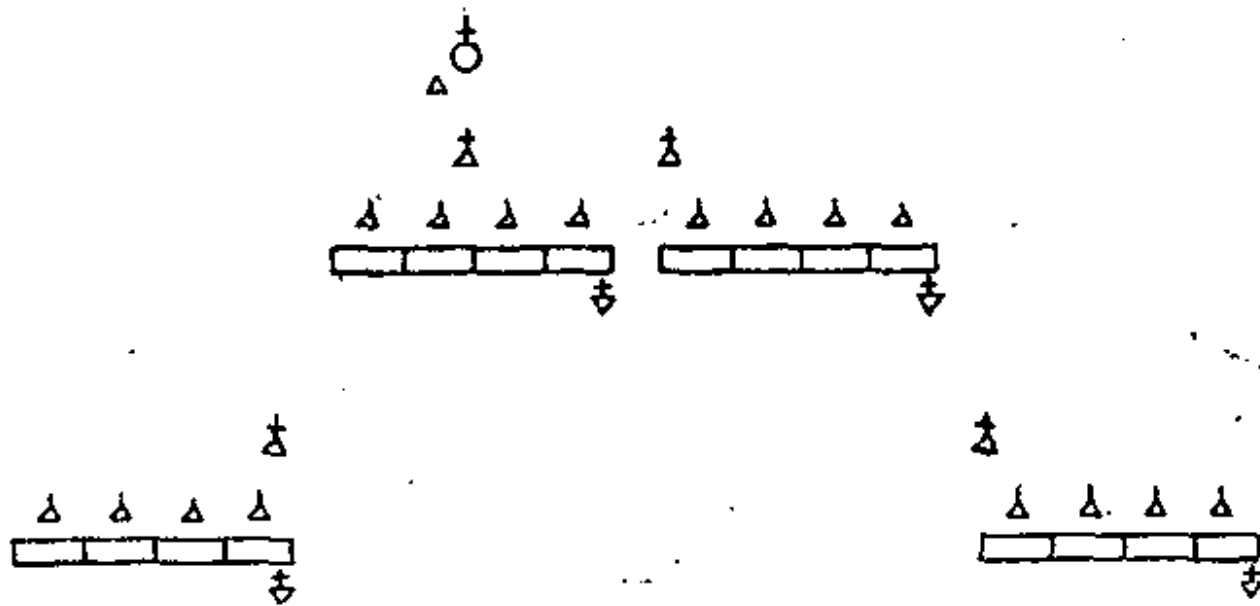
- S. 245. (c) *Advancing from Line of Sqdn. Cols. Halted* }  
 S. 246. (d) *Forming from Line of Sqdn. Cols. Advancing* } As from line.



ECHELON OF SQUADRON COLUMNS FROM THE RIGHT—FROM LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS.

## S. 247. DOUBLE ECHELON.

*Double  
chelon of  
Squad-  
rons.* { The 2nd and 3rd squadron leaders give the com-  
mands *Walk—March*, and the 1st and 4th give *Walk  
—March*, when the 2nd and 3rd have reached  
squadron distance from them plus 8 yards.



In double echelon squadrons are numbered from *right to left*.

## CHANGES OF DIRECTION.

S. 248. (a) *In Line.*

This will never be done. A slight change may be effected by shouldering.

S. 249. (b) *In Line of Squadron Columns.*

*Change  
Direction  
RIGHT—  
WHEEL.* { On the word *WHEEL*, the first troops of each  
squadron wheel as one line, the remaining troops  
covering the leading troop of their squadrons.  
When a  $\frac{1}{4}$ -circle has been wheeled the regiment  
moves forward without orders.



S. 250. (c) *In Mass.*

Same as in line of squadron columns. Wheeling at angle less than 90 deg. should be constantly practised.

S. 251. (d) *In Echelon of Squadron Columns.*

The regimental leader gives the command *Heads of Squadrons RIGHT* (or *LEFT*) *WHEEL*.

S. 252. (e) *In Column of Troops or Sections.*

The regimental leader gives the command, *Head of Regiment RIGHT* (or *LEFT*) *WHEEL*.

## MOVEMENTS TO A FLANK.

S. 253. *Line of Squadron Columns moving in Sections to a Flank and Wheeling each Squadron.*

SECTIONS—*RIGHT* (or *LEFT*).—As before.

*Squadrons RIGHT* (or *LEFT*) *WHEEL.* { On the command *WHEEL* the leading section of each troop in each squadron wheels round in one line, and moves forward after completing  $\frac{1}{4}$  circle; the remaining sections in each squadron covering their leading sections.

Column of troops may be formed from this movement by wheeling sections right or left.

S. 254. *Line of Squadron Columns moving in Sections to a Flank and Wheeling each Troop.*

SECTIONS—*RIGHT* (or *LEFT*).—As before.

*Heads of Troops RIGHT* (or *LEFT*) *WHEEL.* { On the command *WHEEL* the head of each troop wheels as directed, thus forming a line of squadrons marching to a flank in column of sections.

Column of squadrons may be formed from this movement by wheeling sections right or left.

## OBLIQUE FORMATIONS.

S. 255. (a) *From and to Line of Squadron Columns.*

The regimental leader gives the command HEADS OF SQUADRONS HALF RIGHT (or LEFT), and, after each squadron has wheeled the required angle, he gives the command LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS. If the change is half right the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th squadrons move up on the left of, and in line with, the 1st squadron at the next increased pace by their leader's command, and if the change is half left the 3rd, 2nd, and 1st squadrons take the next increased pace by their leader's command and move up on the right of and in line with the 4th squadron.

S. 256. (b) *From and to Line.*

The regimental leader gives the commands TROOPS, HALF RIGHT (or LEFT) followed by on THE RIGHT (or LEFT) FORM SQUADRONS; if the troops have been wheeled half right, squadrons will be "formed" on the left, and *vice versa*; and FORM LINE. If the troops have been wheeled half left, squadrons will Form Line on the right, and *vice versa*.

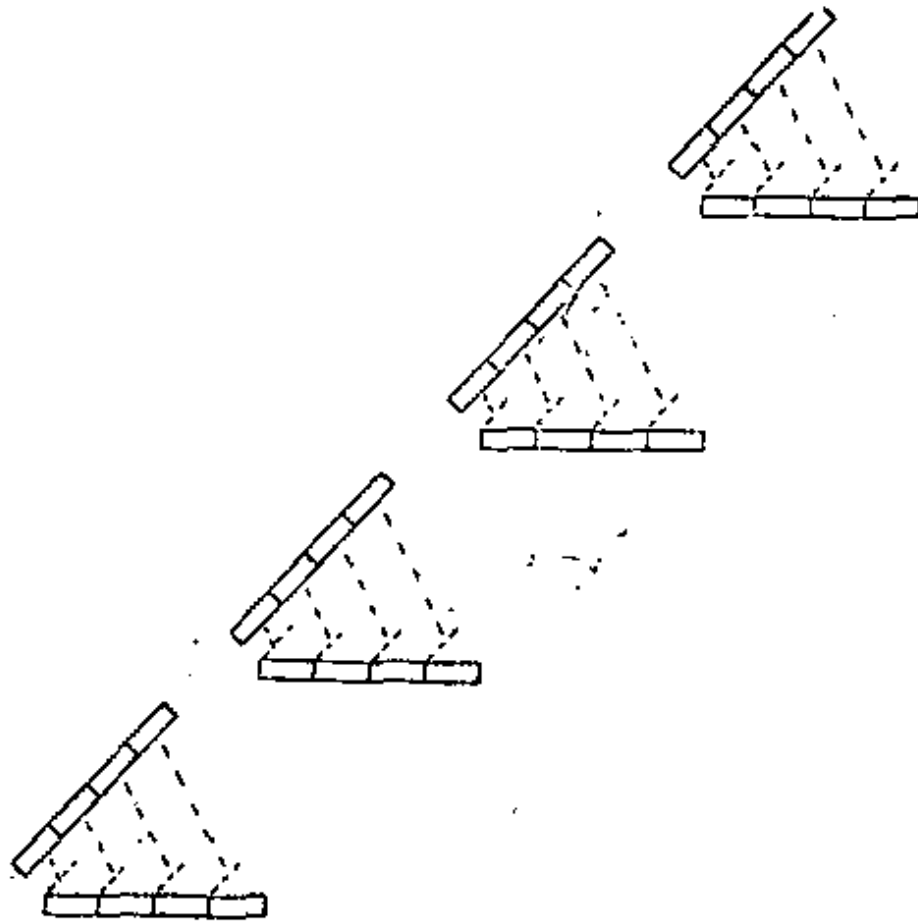
S. 257. (c) *From Column of Troops to Line of Squadron Columns.*

The regimental leader gives the command HEADS OF SQUADRONS HALF RIGHT (or LEFT), followed by LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS, when the rear squadrons will, if squadrons have been wheeled half right, form on the right, and if half left, on the left of the leading squadron.

S. 258. (d) *From Echelon of Squadrons to Line.*

The regimental leader gives the command TROOPS HALF LEFT (or RIGHT), followed by on THE RIGHT (or LEFT)

**FORM—SQUADRONS.** The illustration shows the troop wheeling half left and forming squadrons, which brings the regiment in line



### COLUMN OF ROUTE.

§. 259. (a) *From Line.*

The regimental leader's command is **COLUMN OF ROUTE FROM THE RIGHT** (or **LEFT**). The squadron on the named flank will move off in sections from the right (or left), the remaining squadrons will form sections from their flank nearest the flank of the regiment from which the movement is made, and follow and cover by the shortest route; a distance of 10 yards being allowed between squadrons.

If done from either flank of the 2nd squadron, the 3rd, 1st, and 4th squadrons will follow in this order, and if done from either flank of the 3rd squadron, the 2nd, 4th, and 1st squadrons will follow in this order.

The squadrons which are to follow in rear in each of these cases will form sections from the flank nearer the squadron which is to lead.

S. 260. *(b) From Line of Squadron Columns.*

Sections will be formed from the right (or left) of troops of each squadron, and the movement then carried out on the same principles as "from Line."

S. 261. *(c) From Mass.*

Sections will be formed from the right (or left) of troops of each squadron, and the movement then be carried out on the same principle as "From Line."

S. 262. *(d) From Column of Squadrons.*

Each squadron will form column of sections from the named flank, and move off, allowing 10 yards distance between squadrons.

S. 263. *(e) From Column of Troops.*

Each troop will form column of sections from the named flank, 10 yards distance being allowed between squadrons.

## BRIGADE DRILL.

S. 264. *General Instructions.*

1. Brigade movements will be executed on the same principles as those laid down for the regiment.

2. In forming *line, line of squadron, columns, mass, or line of masses*, from column or echelon, regiments will be first formed, and then brought into the general alignment.

3. In formations from *Column* to *Line*, the second regiment will form on the left, and the third on the right, of the leading one.

4. When regiments have to move independently, commanding officers must name their regiments before giving the executive commands. Thus (From *Line* of Squadron Columns).—Column of masses to the right, ——*th Light Horse, Right form—Mass*

5. In *line* or any *line of columns* formation, the centre troop or squadron is the directing unit, and the regiment to which the body belongs is called the directing regiment.

6. In movements in *line, line of squadron columns, mass, line of masses*, the brigade major will act as guide, about 2 yards in front of troop leaders, and be responsible for the direction and pace, the unit in rear of him (usually the centre of the line) will be the dressing point. Adjutants march with the troop leader of their regiments nearest the dressing point, and pay special attention to the preservation of the correct interval between regiments, except the adjutant of the directing regiment, who will ride in his usual place, and follow the brigade major.

7. Commanding officers must move their regiments rapidly into position, and not devote their attention to details of regimental drill, they give the orders for the movement of their regiments either by command or signal.

8. When the brigadier's order is given by signal, regimental leaders will only give the necessary signal or order for their squadrons to move, and squadron leaders will then act. If the order is conveyed verbally, regimental leaders will in all cases repeat it, and subsequently give the executive command required (if further command necessary) for the movement of their regiments.

9. Squadron leaders do not repeat the brigade order.

10. When the brigadier's order is not distinctly heard, or is not understood, each regimental commander, when the intention is obvious, will conform to the movement executed by the other regiments.

11. In formations or movements *from the halt*, the brigadier's cautionary command is repeated by regimental leaders who then give their cautionary commands, after a pause the brigadier gives an executive *signal* (usually whistle or trumpet sound), on which regimental leaders give their commands.

12. The flank regiment on the hand to which *changes of direction* or movements in *echelon* are made is the directing regiment.

13. The following evolutions deal with a brigade of three regiments on the move:—Commanding officers must understand that if they are done "*To the halt*," or "*From and to the halt*," the base regiment will advance only its own depth, and they must therefore be prepared in some cases to complete the formations by a square flank movement instead of wheeling the head of their commands.

14. The explanations refer to formations *on* and *from* the centre regiment (called the base regiment). When in *line* or any *line of columns*, they may be done *on* or *from* the right or left regiment by naming the flank.

#### POST OF OFFICERS.

##### S. 265. (a) *Brigadier*.

*Manœuvre*.—Where he can best superintend and direct the movements of his command.

*Parade*.—30 yards in front of the leading officer or officers, and opposite the centre of the brigade.

*Marching Past*.—30 yards in front of the leading officer.

S. 266. (b) *Brigade Staff.*

*Staff Officers.*—6 yards in rear of brigadier, and 3 yards interval from each other.

*Gallopers.*—3 yards in rear of staff officers, except when the staff, including gallopers, does not exceed four, in which case the staff will form in one line.

S. 267. *Formations of the Brigade.*

- (a) Brigade Mass.
- (b) Column of Masses.
- (c) Line of Masses.
- (d) Line of Squadron Columns.
- (e) Line.
- (f) Column of Troops.
- (g) Echelon of Regiments.

## S. 268. THE BRIGADE MARCHING.

The brigadier's caution is *The Brigade will Advance*, followed (after regimental leaders have repeated it) by the executive signal of the brigadier, after which each regimental leader will give the command WALK—MARCH (or the signal *Advance*).

## FORMATION OF MASS.

S. 269. (a) *From Line of Masses.*

*Brigadier's Caution.*—*Form Brigade Mass.*

1st regimental leader gives the command LEFT WHEEL—TROT, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FORWARD; the regiment continues at this angle to such a place that after it has wheeled the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle to the right by the command, RIGHT—WHEEL it will be on, or parallel to the alignment, with 16 yards' interval from the base regiment.

2nd regimental leader gives the command **FOR-WARD**.

3rd regimental leader gives the command **RIGHT—WHEEL**, **TROT**, followed by **FOR-WARD**, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, and closes on the left of the base regiment in the same manner as the 1st regiment closes on the right of it.

S. 270. (b) *From Column of Masses.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form Brigade Mass.*

1st regimental leader gives the command **FOR-WARD**.

2nd regimental leader gives the command **LEFT—WHEEL**, **TROT**, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by **FOR-WARD**, and when the regiment arrives opposite its place in the new alignment, **RIGHT—WHEEL**, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by **FOR-WARD**.

3rd regimental leader gives the command, **RIGHT—WHEEL**, **TROT**, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by **FOR-WARD**, and when the regiment arrives opposite its place in the new alignment, **LEFT—WHEEL**, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by **FOR-WARD**.

S. 271. (c) *From Line of Squadron Columns.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form Brigade Mass.*

1st regimental leader gives the command *On the Left* **FORM—MASS**, and when this is done he wheels the regiment until it is on, or parallel to, the alignment, with 16 yards' interval from the right of the base regiment.

2nd regimental leader gives the command **FORM—MASS**, which is made on the 2nd squadron.

3rd regimental leader gives the command *On the Right* **FORM—MASS**, and then he wheels the regiment and forms on the left of the base regiment at 16 yards' interval.



## FORMATION OF LINE OF MASSES.

S. 272. (a) *From Brigade Mass.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form Line of Masses.*

1st regimental leader gives the command RIGHT WHEEL—TROT, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FORWARD, when deploying interval is reached he brings the regiment on, or parallel to, the alignment by the commands LEFT—WHEEL and FOR-WARD.

2nd regimental leader gives the command FOR-WARD.

3rd regimental leader gives the command LEFT—WHEEL—TROT, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FORWARD, when deploying interval is reached he brings the regiment on, or parallel to, the alignment by the commands RIGHT—WHEEL and FOR-WARD.

S. 273. (b) *From Column of Masses.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form Line of Masses.*

1st regimental leader gives the command FOR-WARD.

2nd regimental leader gives the command LEFT—WHEEL—TROT, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FORWARD, and after reaching the deploying interval the regiment is brought on, or parallel to, the alignment by the commands, RIGHT—WHEEL and FOR-WARD.

3rd regimental leader gives the command RIGHT—WHEEL—TROT, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FORWARD, and after reaching the deploying interval the regiment is brought on, or parallel to, the alignment by the commands LEFT—WHEEL and FOR-WARD.

S. 274. (c) *From Line of Squadron Columns.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form Line of Masses.*

Each regimental leader gives the command FORM—MASS.

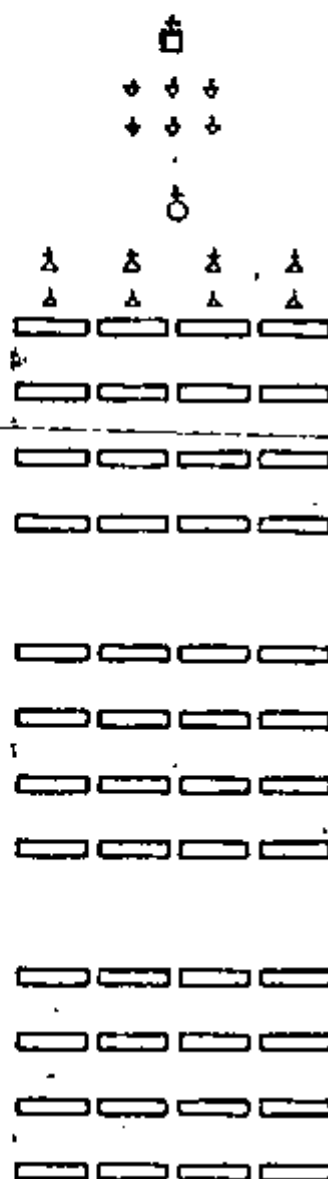
FORMATION OF COLUMN OF MASSES.

275. (a) *From Brigade Mass.*  
*Brigadier's Caution. — Form*  
*column of Masses.*

1st regimental leader gives the command LEFT—WHEEL, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FOR-WARD, and when the regiment arrives in rear of the column, RIGHT—WHEEL (with circle) and FOR-WARD.

2nd regimental leader gives the command FOR-WARD.

3rd regimental leader gives the command RIGHT—WHEEL, followed, when the regiment arrives behind the leading one, by LEFT—WHEEL.



A wheel of regiments to either hand will form Brigade Mass.

S. 276. (b) *From Line of Masses.*

*Brigadier's Caution. — Form Column of Masses.*

1st regimental leader gives the command LEFT—WHEEL, ROT, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FOR-WARD, and when the regiment arrives in rear of the column, it reverses in column by the commands RIGHT—WHEEL ( $\frac{1}{8}$ th circle) and FOR-WARD.

2nd regimental leader gives the command FOR-WARD.

3rd regimental leader gives the command RIGHT—WHEEL TROT, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FOR-WARD, and on arriving behind the 2nd regiment, it covers column by the commands LEFT—WHEEL ( $\frac{1}{8}$ th circle), and FOR-WARD.

S. 277. (c) *From Line of Squadron Columns.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form Column of Masses.*

1st regimental leader gives the command *On the Left* FORM MASS. When this is done he gives LEFT—WHEEL, followed after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FOR-WARD, and on arriving in rear of the column, he covers off by the commands RIGHT—WHEEL ( $\frac{1}{8}$ th circle) and FOR-WARD.

2nd regimental leader gives the command FORM—MASS.

3rd regimental leader gives the command *On the Right* FORM—MASS, when this is done he gives RIGHT—WHEEL, followed after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by FOR-WARD, and follows the 2nd regiment by the commands LEFT—WHEEL ( $\frac{1}{8}$ th circle) and FOR-WARD.

FORMATION OF LINE OF SQUADRON COLUMNS

S. 278. (a) *From Brigade Mass.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form-Line of Squadron Columns.*

1st regimental leader gives the command, *Right—Wheel*, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by *For-ward*. The regiment continues at that angle until the base regiment completes its formation, when the command *Left—Wheel*, is given to bring it on, or parallel to, the alignment, followed by *Line of Squadron Columns from the Left*.

2nd regimental leader gives the command *Line of Squadron—Columns*.

3rd regimental leader gives the command *Left—Wheel*, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by *For-ward*. The regiment continues at that angle until the base regiment completes its formation, when the command *Right—Wheel* is given to bring it on, or parallel to, the alignment, followed by *Line of Squadron Columns from the Right*.

S. 279. (b) *From Line of Masses.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form Line of Squadron Columns.*

Each regimental leader gives the command *Line of Squadron Columns*.

If this is to be done from a flank of the regiments the brigadier must name the flank in his cautionary command.

S. 280. (c) *From Column of Masses.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Form Line of Squadron Columns.*

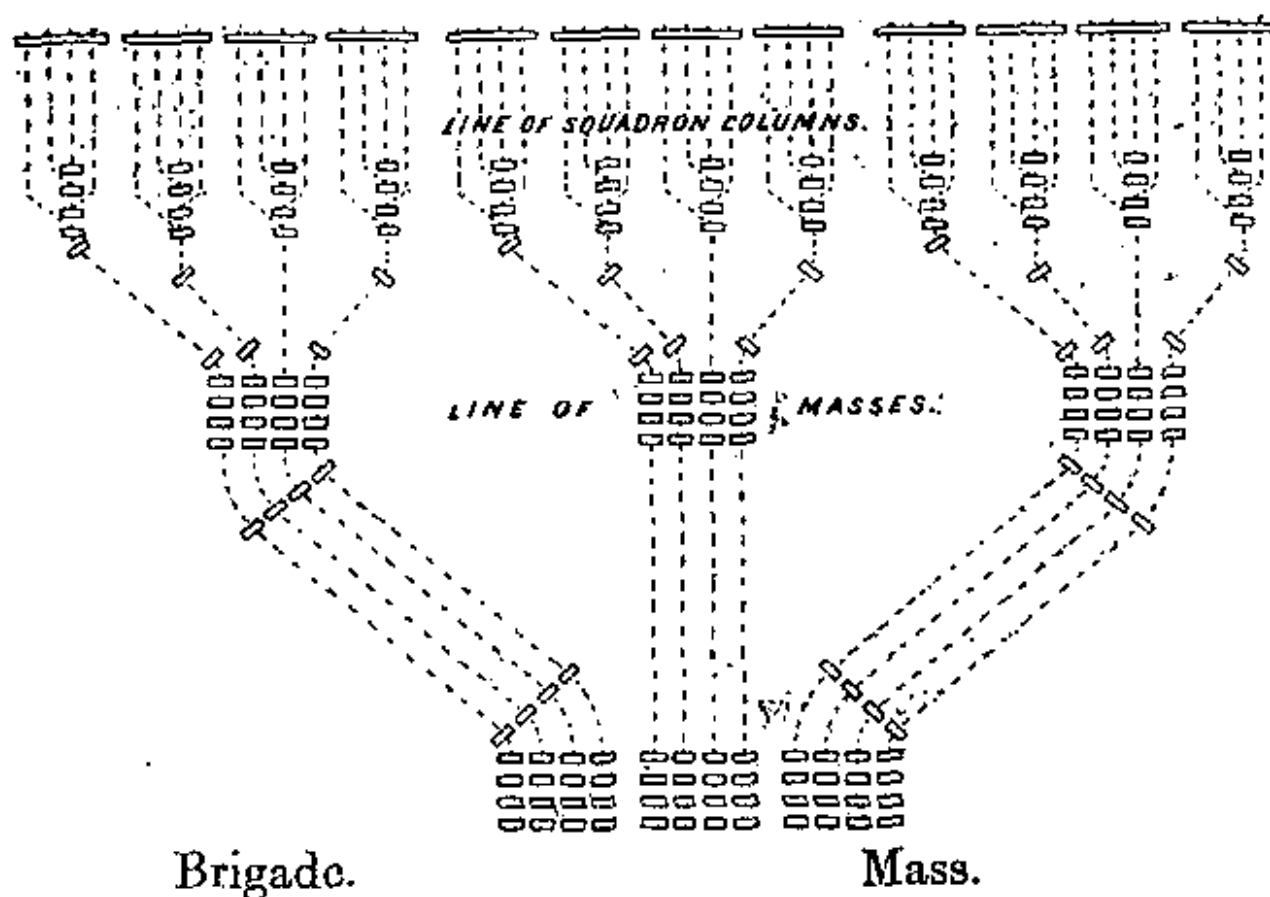
1st regimental leader gives the command, *Line of Squadron—Columns*.

2nd regimental leader gives the command *Left—Wheel*, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by *For-ward*, the regiment continues at that angle until the leading regiment completes its formation, when the command *Right—Wheel* is given to bring it on, or parallel to, the alignment, followed by *Line of Squadron Columns from the Right*.

3rd regimental leader gives the command *Right—Wheel*, followed, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, by *For-ward*, the regiment continues at that angle until the leading regiment completes its formation, when the command *Right—Wheel* is given to bring it on, or parallel to, the alignment, followed by *Line of Squadron Columns from the Left*.

Diagram showing the formation of—

- (1) Line of Masses from Brigade Mass.
- (2) Line of Squadron Columns from Line of Masses.
- (3) Line from Line of Squadron Columns.



### CHANGES OF DIRECTION.

*Brigadier's Caution.*—*The Brigade will wheel to the Right (Left).*

S. 281. (a) *In Brigade Mass, (b) In Line of Masses, (c) In Line of Squadron Columns.*

The leading troop of every squadron will wheel together in one line, and the rear troops cover their respective leading troops.

S. 282. (d) *In Column of Masses.*

The leading regiment wheels in the usual way, and the others do likewise in succession as they reach the wheeling point.

## MOVEMENTS TO A FLANK.

S. 283. (a) *From Brigade Mass.*

(i.) *From Brigade Mass to Column of Masses.*—*Brigadier's Caution.*—*Column of Masses to the Right (or Left).*

Each regimental leader gives the command RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.

(ii.) *From and to Brigade Mass.*—*Brigadier's Caution.*—*Mass to the Right (or Left).*

1st regimental leader gives the command RIGHT—WHEEL.

2nd regimental leader gives the command RIGHT—WHEEL, followed, after wheeling  $\frac{1}{8}$ th circle by FOR-WARD, and when opposite place on the left of the 1st regiment the new alignment is reached by another half wheel to the right.

3rd regimental leader gives the command SECTIONS—ABOUT, followed by LEFT—WHEEL, and is formed on the right of the leading right.

S. 284. (b) *From Line of Masses.*

(i.) *From Line of Masses to Column of Masses.*—*Brigadier's Caution.*—*Column of Masses to the Right (or Left).*

Each regimental leader gives the command RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL, the 2nd and 3rd regiments then close to a distance equal to their frontage in mass plus 16 yards from the regiment preceding them.

(ii.) *From Line of Masses to Brigade Mass.*—*Brigadier's Caution.*—*Brigade Mass to the Right (or Left).*

This is carried out as in forming mass to a flank from *Mass.*

S. 285. (c) *From Column of Masses.*

(i.) *From Column of Masses to Brigade Mass.—Brigadier's Caution.—Brigade Mass to the Right (or Left).*

Each regimental leader gives the command RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.

S. 286. (d) *From Line of Squadron Columns.*

(i.) *From Line of Squadron Columns to Column of Squadrons.—Brigadier's Caution.—Column of Squadrons to the Right (or Left).*

Each regimental leader gives the command TROOPS RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.

(ii.) *From Line of Squadron Columns to Column of Troops.—Brigadier's Caution.—Column of Troops to the Right (or Left).*

Each regimental leader gives the command HEADS OF SQUADRONS RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.

## CHANGES OF FRONT.

Carried out *from* and *to* the halt and made *To the Right (or Left)* on any regiment, by bringing one flank forward, and throwing the other back.

S. 287. (a) *To the Right on the Right Regiment.*

*Brigadier's Caution.—Change front to the Right ( $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{1}{4}$  right on the Right Regiment.*

Each regimental leader give the cautionary command *Right—Wheel.*

Brigadier's executive command *Walk—March.*

1st regiment wheels the  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a circle, moves up its depth, and halts.

2nd and 3rd regimental leaders give the command FORWARD, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, and continue in the

direction until opposite their respective markers, when they wheel another  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle to the right, and march *by the right* on the marker.

S. 288. (b) *To the Right on the Left Regiment.*

*Brigadier's Caution.*—*Change Front to the Right* ( $\frac{1}{2}$  or  $\frac{1}{4}$  right) *on the Left Regiment.*

1st and 2nd regimental leaders give the executive command SECTIONS—ABOUT.

3rd regimental leader gives the cautionary command *Right—Wheel.*

Brigadier's executive command *Walk—March.*

1st and 2nd regimental leaders give the command RIGHT—WHEEL and FORWARD, after wheeling the  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, they continue at that angle to such a distance that when they give the command to right wheel another  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of a circle, their regiments will be marching to the rear of, and parallel to, the new alignment, when the rear troops of their regiments are clear of the new alignment they give SECTIONS—ABOUT, and march *by the left* on their markers.

3rd regimental leader wheels the  $\frac{1}{4}$  of a circle, moves forward the depth of his regiment, and halts.

## GUARDS.

*General Instructions for Guards and Sentries.*

S. 289. *Guards.*

1. Commanders of guards are to make themselves thoroughly acquainted with all the orders for their guards, as well as with those on each sentry's post. The standing orders of the guard are to be distinctly read and fully explained to the men as soon as the guard has mounted. Every relief is to be regularly inspected before going to, and also on returning from, its post.



2. Commanders and non-commissioned officers of guards will exercise the greatest vigilance to insure the efficient performance of all duties and to check all irregularities on the part of the guards. The commander will visit his sentries at least twice by day and twice by night, to ascertain that they are alert on the posts and acquainted with their orders, in addition, at frequent and uncertain intervals, send a non-commissioned officer with a man to perform the same duty.

3. Commanders are never to quit their guards except for the purpose of visiting their sentries, and will then inform the next in command of their intention and probable time of absence. They are also to prevent any N.C.O. or soldier from quitting the guard without leave, which is to be granted only for special purposes.

4. Armed parties marching with arms at the secure, or who march with side-arms only, will pay and return compliments as usual to armed parties.

5. All guards are to be carefully inspected by the adjutant before mounting and dismounting.

6. Neither officers, N.C.O.'s, nor men are on any account to take off their clothing or accoutrements while on guard.

7. Should a fire break out, or any alarm be raised, all guards are to be immediately under arms and await orders.

8. In case of sickness of soldiers in arrest they must at once be conveyed to hospital, or the medical officer of the day be sent for.

9. All persons should be prevented from loitering about the guard, and no one allowed to bring beer, wine, or spirits to the guard or soldiers in arrest, except a pint of beer at the dinner hour for each man on guard who may require it.

10. When the guard dresses in overcoats, accoutrements are to be worn outside of greatcoats. Uniformity in dress must always be observed by guards and sentries.

11. Soldiers on being confined in the guard room or tent shall be searched. Should a soldier be confined in a room or tent other than that of his own corps, a report will as soon as possible be forwarded to his C.O., who will send an escort for him.

12. ~~When guards turn out they will fall in with sloped arms and bayonets fixed.~~ When commanded by an officer, he will fall in three paces in front of the centre; with senior N.C.O. on the right and junior on left; when by a N.C.O., he will fall in on the right. The trumpeter will fall in three paces on the right of the N.C.O. Guards are to *Turn out* at the commencement of the réveille, retreat, and tattoo (last post) sounding, and be regularly inspected by their commanders.

They will also turn out at all times when armed parties of any branch of the service approach their posts; to Armed Corps\* they will present arms, and before other armed parties they will stand with sloped arms. They will not turn out to unarmed parties.

If a N.C. Officer is in command of a guard he will not present arms with the guard.

Guards will not turn out after retreat or before réveille, except at tattoo (last post), on the approach of an armed party, in cases of alarm, or to receive grand or visiting rounds, nor will they during this period pay any compliments, except to grand rounds, to whom they will present arms.

---

By the expression "*Armed Corps*" is meant a regiment of light horse, a battery of artillery with its guns, a brigade of artillery without guns, garrison artillery of not less than two companies, engineers of not less than four companies, and a battalion of infantry with or without colours.

13. Regimental guards turn out to their commanding officer ("presenting arms") once a day, and to the captain and subaltern of the day, "sloping arms," and to other persons according to the orders received.

14. The commander will see that the guard tent is cleaned out by 8.45 a.m., and the immediate vicinity kept free from rubbish.

15. Guards, including reliefs, rounds, and patrols, will march with sloped arms and bayonets fixed.

16. In wet weather arms will be carried at the *Secure*.

#### S. 290. *Sentries.*

1. Will not present arms to any officer or armed party (except grand rounds) after sunset; but as long as they can discern an officer, they will turn to their front on his approach, and salute with the rifle at the slope.

2. In sentry boxes salute by coming to attention.

3. Are relieved every two hours.

4. Pay compliments as prescribed in S. —

5. Take charge of all Government property near their posts.

6. Allow no nuisance to be committed on or near their posts.

7. Deposit their haversacks, water bottles, and caps, when not in wear, in the guard tent, and the greatcoats (except when required to be worn) in the sentry boxes.

8. Walk about with sloped arms and bayonets fixed.

9. The front, and the extent of the walk, should be pointed out to each sentry when posted. They must walk to and from their posts in a brisk and soldier-like manner. They must on no account quit their arms, lounge, or converse with any one, nor must they stand in their sentry-boxes in good or even moderate weather.

10. They will always turn outwards when turning about.

11. A sentry will not quit his post till properly relieved.

S. 291. *Relieving or Posting a Guard.*

1. When the ground admits a new guard will advance in line towards the front of the old guard, and will be drawn up when possible fifteen paces in front, or when not possible, six paces from the left of the old guard.

2. As soon as this is completed, the old guard will present arms and the new guard will return the salute.

3. Both guards will in like successive manner slope arms, order arms, and stand at ease.

4. The guard will then be told off and the first relief sent out. When the first relief of a new guard is sent out, a corporal belonging to the old guard will accompany it, to bring in the relieved sentries. If the relief moves in line, he will be on the left flank, the corporal of the new relief on the right. If in file (or as in file) he will be at the head, the corporal of the new relief on the right of the rear man. As soon as all the sentries are relieved, the two corporals will change places, and the corporal of the old guard will assume command. While the relief is marching round, the commander will take over the property in charge of the guard according to the list in the old guard report, also prisoners (if any).

5. When the reliefs have returned, and all the men of the old guard have fallen in, both guards will be called to attention, and ordered to slope arms.

6. The old guard will then move off, the new guard presenting arms.

7. When the old guard is clear of the ground, the new guard will slope arms, and if not already there, will move on to the alignment vacated by the old guard. Arms will then be ordered, and the commander of the guard will read and explain the orders of the guard to his men. These orders will also

be read and explained to the men forming the first relief when they come off sentry. The men of the guard will then be dismissed to the guard room.

S. 292. *Relieving and Posting Sentries and Marching Reliefs.*

1. On the approach of the relief, the sentry, with rifle at the *Slope*, will place himself in front of the sentry-box. The corporal of the relief will proceed as follows:—

*Relief.*—Halt. At about six paces from the sentry.

The new sentry will then move out from the relief and fall in on the left of the old sentry, facing in the same direction. The old sentry will then give over his orders, the corporals seeing they are correctly given and understood.

*Pass.*—The old sentry will move to the place in the relief vacated by the new sentry, and the new sentry will close two paces to his right.

*Relief, Quick—March.*—The relief will be marched off.

2. When a sentry who is to be posted on a new post has reached the post assigned to him, he will be ordered to halt and face in required direction. The corporal will then read and explain the orders to him.

3. The object for which he is posted, the front of his post, and the extent of his beat, will be clearly pointed out to a sentry when first posted.

4. *Marching Reliefs.*—Reliefs of fewer than four men will be formed in line. When of four men or upwards they will be formed in half sections. (In streets and narrow places, reliefs should always be marched in single file.) When marching in line, the corporal will be on the right; when in single file, on the right of the rear file.

S. 293. *Sentries Challenging.*

1. When it becomes dark the sentries will challenge in the following manner :—On the approach of a person the sentry will call out in a sharp tone, *Halt! Who comes there?* when on a post where a sudden rush could be made upon him, he will at once come to the loading position, with point of bayonet height of man's chest. If the person approaching gives a satisfactory reply, the sentry will say *Pass friend; All's well*, remaining at the *Slope* or (*\*Engage*), till he has passed. If the person approaching answers *Grand* (or *Visiting*) *Rounds*, the sentry, if there is no countersign, will say *Pass grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds; All's well*; presenting arms as they pass if they are grand rounds. But if there is a countersign, he will say, *Stand grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds; Advance one and give the countersign*, at the same time coming to the loading position as above. In this position he will receive the countersign; and if it is correct will say *Pass grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds; All's well*; and proceed as above described. If sentry is on or near the guard room tent door he will proceed as in S.

S. 294. *Sentries Paying Compliments.*

On the approach of an officer and when he is at least 15 paces distant, the sentry, if on the march, will halt, front and open arms; if standing at ease, he will come to attention and open arms.

He will *Present Arms*, as they pass—(a) to Their Excellencies the Governor-General and Governors; (b) to General and Field Officers when in uniform; (c) to Officers of the Navy entitled thereto, when in uniform. He will only salute all other officers they pass.

To all armed parties (except those which belong to his own guard), whether they are commanded by an officer or not, the sentry will present arms. The party will return the compliment by marching at the slope (except when arms are at the security or when only side-arms are carried) receiving the command *Eyes Right* (or *Left*). If an officer is in command of the party he will salute in the usual manner on giving the word, *Eyes Right* (or *Left*); if a N.C.O., he will not salute.

To all unarmed parties a sentry will slope arms, unless they are commanded by an officer, in which case he will salute according to the rank of the officer. In return, the commander of the party gives *Eyes Right* or *Eyes Left*, as the case may be, and if an officer, salutes, and, having passed, gives *Eyes Front*.

#### S. 295. *Guards Turning out at Night.*

The following form will be observed when a guard is visited by the field officer or captain of the day, termed grand or visiting rounds :—

On their approach the sentry at or near the guard-room door will challenge : *Halt! Who comes there?* The officer will reply *Grand* (or *Visiting*) *rounds*. The sentry will then call : *Guards turn out*. The guard will fall in with bayonets fixed and arms sloped, and, if there is no countersign, the commander will call out : *Advance, grand* (or *visiting*) *rounds; All's well*. To grand rounds the guard will present; to visiting rounds the guard will remain at the slope.

If there is a countersign to be given, a N.C.O. with two men of the guard will double out, and when about ten paces from the rounds he will order the men to halt, when they will halt and come at once to the loading position with bayonets above the height of a man's chest. The N.C. officer will then repeat the challenge : *Who comes there?* The reply will again

*grand (or visiting) rounds*, the non-commissioned officer calling : *stand grand (or visiting) rounds. Advance one and give the countersign.* Rounds will then in a low voice give the countersign, which the non-commissioned officer alone will carry, in double time, for verification to the commander of the guard. If correct the commander of the guard will call out, *Advance grand (or visiting) rounds ; All's well.* The men will then double back to the guard, and rounds will advance to the guards, which will present arms to grand rounds.

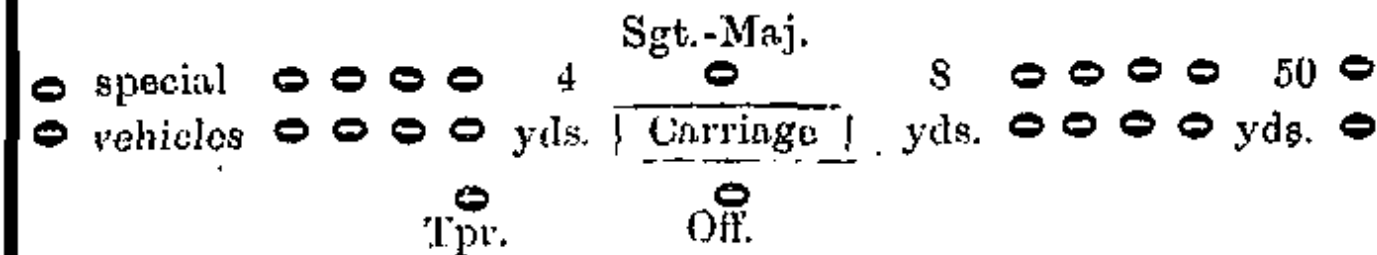
ESCORTS.

S. 296. *General Instructions.*

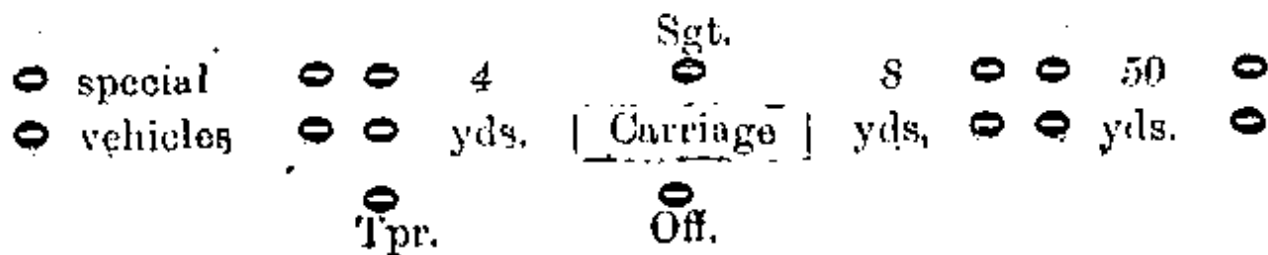
For the Governor-General.—1 Officer, 1 Sergt.-Major, 1 Trumpeter, 20 Rank and File.

For a State Governor.—1 Officer, 1 Sergeant, 1 Trumpeter, 20 Rank and File, and will be distributed as per plate.

S. 297. GOVERNOR-GENERAL'S ESCORT.



S. 298. STATE GOVERNOR'S ESCORT.



NOTE, - Not drawn to scale.



An escort should be told off and formed up in such a manner that its different parties can move off in succession in the required direction without any delay or confusion, and without the advanced parties having to pass across the front of the rear parties. Thus, if the escort is to move towards its right, it should be told off from its right; if towards the left, it should be told off from the left. In all cases the N.C.O.'s and men composing an escort must be instructed beforehand as to the exact positions they are to occupy.

The position for the officer or N.C.O. riding by the carriage (unless other special instructions are given) is near the door with their bodies in line with the carriage window. The officer in command of the escort should ascertain beforehand on which side of the carriage the principal personage will be seated, and will invariably ride on that side. In most cases it will be on the right, and the following instructions are framed on that supposition. The Senior N.C.O. takes post on the opposite side of the carriage.

If His Excellency desires to speak with any one, the officer of the escort must drop slightly back, in order to allow the person to approach the carriage, resuming his original position the instant the conversation is ended. The officer in command of the escort has a most important duty to perform. He is at all times immediately and solely responsible for the safety of His Excellency. His place cannot be supplied by any one not belonging to the escort, and he must on no account be interfered with by any person. All orders regarding the disposal, dismissal, cloaking, &c., are to be taken from the A.D.C. in waiting. The only authorized paces for escorts are the Walk and the Trot.

The escort ride with their Rifles at the *Advance* (Swords at the *Carry*, Lances at the *Trail*). The two leading and rear men of the advanced and rear guards respectively in all escorts will

ride with rifles at the *Carry* (without word of command). The pace is regulated by the carriage, and the different parties of the escort must be careful to preserve their distances from it. In most cases 50 yards is the distance to be maintained between the different parties of the advanced and rear guards of an escort, but this distance may be diminished according to circumstances. As a rule the rear of that party of an escort which immediately precedes the carriage will keep at a distance of about 8 yards in front of the leaders' heads, and the head of the party immediately following the carriage will be 4 yards distance behind the carriage.

On all occasions the greatest care must be taken that the progress of the carriage is in no way impeded.

Escorts are formed up with rifles at the *Advance* (swords at the *Slope*, Lances at the *Order*) facing the point at which the carriage is waiting. On the appearance of His Excellency the officer in charge will give the commands *Royal Salute, Carry Arms (Carry Swords or Lance)*, on which the officer salutes, and the trumpet sounds. As soon as His Excellency is ready to start, the commands *Form the Escort—March*, is given, on which the advanced guard immediately moves off at an increased pace until it gains its proper distance, the rear guard remaining still until the carriage has moved past, when it will take up its position. Immediately the escort moves off, rifles will be brought to the *Advance* (except the two leading and two rear men of the advanced and rear guards respectively), swords to the *Carry*, and lances to the *Trail*.

When the destination is reached, the two men of the advanced guard form up at such a distance beyond the point at which the centre of the carriage will draw up (and facing towards that point) as will bring the commander of the escort opposite the carriage door when he is in the centre of the escort. The

remainder of the escort as they reach the advanced men will form upon them on the inner flank. On His Excellency quitting the carriage, the officer gives the command *Royal Salute, Carry Arms (Carry Swords or Lance)*, on which the officer salutes and the trumpet sounds, as at the start.

The escort will form up for the return journey, and march off in the same formation (from the right whenever practicable), and on arriving at its destination will form up in the manner previously described.

Escorts will turn out in *Review Order* unless otherwise ordered.

## REGIMENTAL PARADE MOVEMENTS.

### POSTS OF OFFICERS.

#### S. 299. (a) *Commanding Officer.*

*In All Formations.*—In front of the centre of the line or leading body, two horses' lengths in advance of the leading officer or officers.

In marching and ranking past in any formation, after passing the saluting point, the commanding officer falls out and places himself by the reviewing officer, except when marching past by wings, or with the regiment in line.

#### S. 300. (b) *Second in Command.*

*In Marching and Ranking Past.*—In all formations, except wings, in rear of the regiment, one horse's length behind the adjutant (half horse's length when ranking past). In wings, in front of the centre of the rear wing, two horses' lengths in advance of the leading officers.

S. 301. (c) *Adjutant.*

*In Marching or Ranking Past.*—In all formations, one horse's length in rear of the serrefile rank and on that flank of the rear unit which is the nearer to the saluting point.

S. 302. (d) *Squadron Leader.*

*In Marching, Trotting, and Galloping Past by Squadrons.*—One horse's length in front of the line of troop leaders, opposite the centre of his squadron. In regiments with colours, the leading squadron commander is one horse's length in front of the colour.

*In Ranking Past.*—In front of the squadron, half horse's length in advance of the first troop leader.

NOTE.—In regimental parade movements, after passing the saluting point the squadron commander falls out to the right, and places himself on the right of the commanding officer while his squadron is ranking past.

S. 303. (e) *Staff Officers.*

In one rank at close files, at two horses' lengths interval, on the right of the adjutant.

S. 304. (f) *Trumpeters and Band.*

As a rule, during the parade movements, the trumpeters will be formed with the band which is posted on the right of the staff at one horse's length interval from them.

If the band is not present, the whole of the trumpeters will usually be formed on the right of the staff officers, at one horse's length interval from them. The commanding officer's trumpeter is half-horse's length to the flank and to the rear of that officer, on the flank further away from the saluting point.

S. 305. *Inspection or Review of the Regiment.*

The regiment is formed in Line, or Line of Column of Half-Squadrons on the ground where the reviewing officer is to be received.

A point is marked about 150 yards in front of the centre, at which the reviewing officer will generally take his station.

On the command *Officers, to the front—March*, the officers *Carry Swords*, and with the colour bearer come to the front in the intervals between the troop leaders, they are dressed *By the Right* by the 2nd in command, and he gives the command, *Eyes Front* when completed.

Squadron leaders do not repeat the words of command while the regiment remains stationary on the parade line.

When the reviewing officer presents himself before the centre of the regiment, the command *General Salute, Eyes Centre, Carry—Arms* is given and the officers taking the time from the regimental leader salute. The colour salutes such persons only as are entitled to that honour. The band plays the first part of a slow march, or trumpets sound, according to the reviewing officers' rank, after which the officers (taking the time from the regimental leader) recover and carry swords.

The reviewing officer then goes to the right, accompanied by the commanding officer, and passes along the regiment, the band playing or trumpets sounding until he leaves the line.

When the inspection is completed, the command *Advance Arms* is given, on which the officers slope swords, and *Officers Take—Post*, when the officers and colour bearer move to their former positions.

## S. 306. FORMATION FOR REVIEW IN MASS.

The staff, except the adjutant, will be in rear of the centre at a horse's length distance; the band three horses' lengths in

rear of the staff. If required, the staff and band may be formed on the right, at the same intervals as when the regiment is in line.

Before the reviewing officer arrives on the ground, the commanding officer gives the command *Officers, to the front—March*, on which the officers (except the staff officers) come to the front at the trot, and take post at one horse's length in front of their squadrons.

While passing down the line, during the inspection of the ranks, the trumpeters of general and commanding officers will ride together in rear of the party.

#### S. 307. MARCHING PAST.

The regimental leader gives the caution, *The Regiment will March Past in Squadron Column. Troops, Right Wheel—Walk, March.* The staff (except the adjutant) fall out and remain in rear of the saluting point.

Markers are placed by the adjutant as follows:—B and C about 60 yards on the right and left of the saluting point. A at such an interval from and on the left of B to allow sufficient depth for the regiment to form mass (*i.e.*, about 70 yards). D about 70 yards interval from and on the right of C. The markers keep their arms at the *Carry* while the regiment is marching past. The band marches in front of the column.

When the leading troop arrives at a point opposite marker A the regimental leader gives the command *Head Left—Wheel*, and directs the march on marker A. A similar change of direction is made when within wheeling distance of marker A.

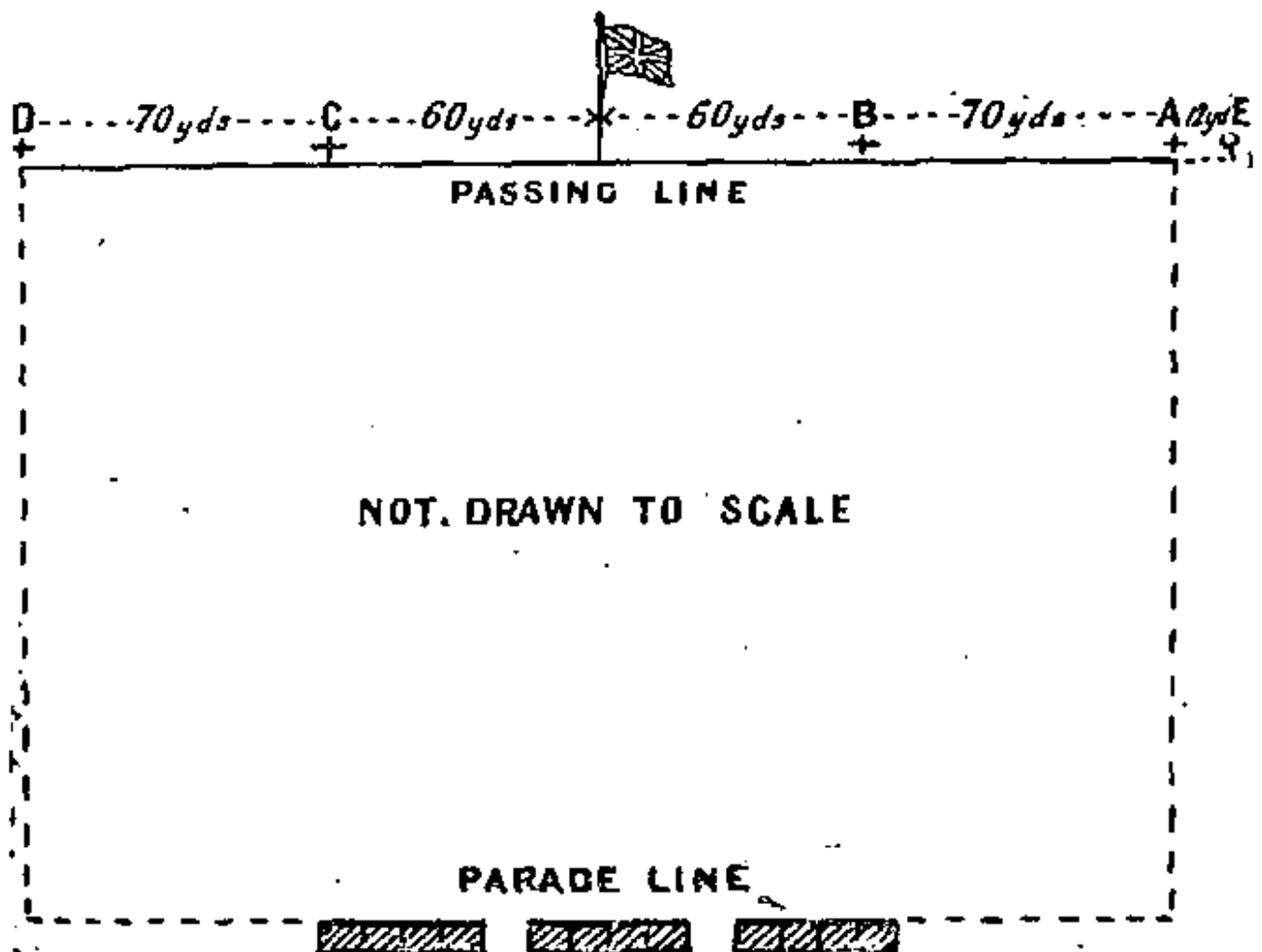
On all occasions when marching past by squadrons, wings, or regiments, either at the walk, trot, or gallop, the colour bearer and escort post for marching past when the leading body wheels into line from column of troops at the commencement of the

passing line. They resume their ordinary posts in column on reaching the end of the passing line at the fourth marker.

When the squadron arrives at marker B, the squadron leader gives the command *Carry Arms*.

The band (or trumpeters, when there is no band), six horses lengths in front of the commanding officer, commences to play immediately after the leading troop has wheeled on to the passing line at A, and, after passing the reviewing officer, it wheels to the left, clears the flank of the column, then wheels to the left about so as to take up a position opposite the saluting point and plays while the regiment is passing.

When the leading troop of each squadron arrives at the marker B, the squadron leader gives the command *Carry Arms*.



*Eyes Right*, on which the troops dress by the right, and continue to do so until opposite marker C. The serrefiles dress by the right. While passing from B to C it is the duty of the man on the flank of each troop which is the nearer to the saluting point to keep the flank exactly upon the line of markers.

The officers, when at 10 yards of the reviewing officer, commence the salute. The serrefile officers, if more than one, take the time from the officer on the right of their rank. At 10 yards beyond the saluting point the officers *recover* and *carry* their swords.

#### S. 308. *Officers' Salute in Marching Past.*

First motion: Carry the sword direct to the right to the full extent of the arm, hand as high as the shoulder, back of the hand to the rear, blade perpendicular, edge to the right.

Second motion: Bring the sword by a circular motion to the *Recover*, keeping the elbow as high as the shoulder.

Third motion: Still keeping the elbow to the height of the shoulder, bring the hilt to the right shoulder, hand as high as the elbow, during this motion let the finger nails come in line with the edge of the sword.

Fourth motion; Lower the sword to the front to the full extent of the arm, the point over the right foot, edge to the left, thumb extended in the direction of the point, elbow very slightly bent, hand directly under and *not* in front of the shoulder. The four motions should be combined in one graceful movement. If mounted, *slow time*, and dismounted, *quick time*.

When each squadron arrives at marker C, the squadron gives the command *Advance Arms, Eyes Front*.

The squadron leaders wheel their commands to the left on the marker D.



## S. 309. MARCH PAST AT THE TROT.

The regimental leader gives the caution *Trot Past by Troops* (or *Squadrons*).

If the trot past is to be by squadrons, each squadron is formed in line as it arrives on the passing line.

At the marker B squadron leaders give the command *Carry Swords*, and at C *Slope Swords*. Rifles are kept at the *Advance*, and troops look to the front.

## S. 310. MARCH PAST AT THE GALLOP.

The regimental leader gives the caution *Gallop Past by Squadrons*. This movement is generally performed by entering the passing line at marker D. At marker C each squadron leader gives the command *Carry Swords*, and *Slope Swords* at B, and is wheeled off the passing line at A.

After galloping past, the bands will at once clear the front at the trot, and move to the position indicated by the staff officer. The troops will usually form line of squadron column facing the saluting point, or, if the space is restricted, line of masses.

The officers will carry their swords as usual, but the men will keep their arms at the advance, and troops look to the front.

As soon as all the squadrons have wheeled off the passing line at A, the commanding officer gives the command *Trot*.

The regiment, on arriving on the original parade line, is again formed as before, or otherwise as ordered.

The markers, on the conclusion of the march past, rejoin their regiment.

The line of officers is dressed, from the flank towards which the dressing is, by the second in command or adjutant.

The reviewing officer is received as described for a regiment in line.

On the conclusion of the inspection of the ranks, the commanding officer gives the commands *Advance Arms, Officers take Post, March.*

### S. 311. ADVANCE IN REVIEW ORDER.

If the regiment is to advance in review order at the conclusion of a review, it will be formed as required on the original parade line, the band being formed in rear of the centre at three horses' lengths distance from the serrefile rank. The commanding officer gives the caution *Officers to the Front*, on which the officers move to the front and take post as before. The commanding officer then gives the words *Advance in Review Order, Carry Arms, Walk—March*, officers carrying swords on the word *March*, on which the regiment will advance by the squadron of direction until within 40 or 50 yards of the reviewing officer, when it will be halted and receive the command *General Salute, Eyes Centre*, the officers saluting and the band playing in the same way as when receiving the reviewing officer. During the advance, the band commences to play on the command *March*, and ceases on the command *Halt*. After the officers have recovered and carried swords with the commanding officer, the regiment will wait for orders.

The commanding officer will subsequently give the command *Advance Arms, Officers take Post—March.*

In the advance in review order, squadron commanders only repeat the command *Halt*.

### S. 312. *The Brigade.*

The bands will be massed 25 yards in rear of the centre, standing in the same order as their respective regiments. When formed on parade for inspection the brigadier is ten horses' lengths in front of the line of commanding officers. Staff officers two horses' lengths in rear of them, one horse's length interval

from one another. Gallopers one horse's length in rear of staff officers, except when the staff, including gallopers, does not exceed four officers in number, in this case, the staff will form in one line.

If the brigade is formed for the review or inspection of a royal personage or superior officer, on the latter presenting himself, the brigadier will give the command *Attention, Royal (or General) Salute, Carry Arms*, the time being taken by commanding officers from him. The officers will have been brought to the front before the royal personage or superior officer is received. If the latter inspects the troops, the brigadier will accompany him during the inspection, but commanding officers will remain at their posts. The brigade staff while passing down the line will precede the brigadier by two horses' lengths. Gallopers one horse's length in front of the staff.

When a brigade has been directed to form up for inspection a squadron of one regiment is named as the squadron of direction, the two markers of that regiment take posts outside the points where the right and left of the squadron of direction will stand when at *Order*, and the markers of the other regiments mark the points where the right and left flanks of their respective regiments will stand, dressing upon the markers of the base regiment. In the absence of the staff officer, the adjutant of the regiment furnishing the base squadron will, as on all similar occasions, place the base marker and superintend the dressing.

The march past will usually be conducted in the same order as is laid down for the single regiment, regiments moving off in succession. When marching past in any order of formation column distance will be kept between regiments and brigades in ranking past, the distance between them will be eight horses lengths.

The intervals between the markers, who will be posted as during the parade movements of the regiment, must be regulated to suit the ground and the number of troops on parade.

When the markers move out on the order of the staff officer, the bands will trot through the nearest interval, and form in line at marker B, ready for marching past and awaiting the order to advance from the staff officer.

While on the passing line, the brigade-majors and aides-de-camp are two horses' lengths in front of their brigadiers, and at one horse's length interval from each other, the gallopers (if present) being one horse's length in front of the staff officers. Brigadiers are two horses' lengths in front of the commanding officers of their leading regiments. Officers salute as in the parade movements of the regiment.

When marching past the brigadier falls out after saluting, and places himself at the saluting point while their brigades are passing, their aides-de-camp and trumpeters accompanying them.

The staff officers at the head of the column follow the bands at sufficient distance to insure their clearing their front on wheeling off the passing line. The bands wheel to the left after passing the saluting point, wheel again, and form facing the reviewing officer, at a sufficient distance from the passing line to allow the troops to march past in the order of formation required.

### 313. TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT OF LIGHT HORSE.

The predominant characteristic of Light Horse is the action of the man and horse combined.

It is the power to move with rapidity and cover long distances in a comparatively short time, that gives to Light Horse its great moral and material effect, and enables it to combine both attack and surprise to the best advantage.

At times, when acting independently, or with Infantry, it will have to adopt the method applicable to the prolonged attack of a position, involving the employment in the initial stages of a thin firing line, and the subsequent gradual strengthening thereof by the sending forward of supports and reserve until a firing line of the maximum possible strength is established as near the position as possible, with a view of securing superiority of fire, before delivery of the final effort.

But sometimes the detached nature of the employment developing upon Light Horse in connexion with the fight, whether acting in conjunction with the other arms, and frequently when acting alone, will make its striking by this method highly undesirable, and a long fire fight will be unsuitable; for example in outflanking movements, in striking at the opposing mounted troops, in the pursuit, &c. The effective employment of the fire action by Light Horse in such cases is dependent on knowledge of the power of the rifle, combined with a thorough acquaintance of the advantages to be derived from rapid and concealed movement.

In such attacks long advances on foot should seldom be undertaken, but the gaining of the object in view should be largely secured rather by surprise and rapidity. Endeavour should be made to advance rapidly mounted as near as possible to the fire position, adopting such formations as will enable full advantage to be taken of the concealment afforded by the ground. In some instances it may be found expedient to move mounted in extended order over open ground to the first fire position.

Subject to the providing of the required reserve, it will be preferable to employ the maximum available number of rifles as soon as possible, and to develop the greatest fire effect from the moment it is decided to open fire, which will usually be attained

best by rapid bursts and by concentration of fire; when favorable targets present themselves, the utmost rapidity of fire compatible with accuracy should be aimed at.

Economy of ammunition is of great importance; this should be effected, not by limiting fire when needed, but by judiciously timing its use.

The rapidity with which Light Horse can change position, combined with the increased effect of enfilade fire, due to the long range of modern rifles, materially favours the employment of outflanking movements. Leaders should, therefore, be on the look-out for opportunities to force the enemy to give ground by unexpectedly occupying positions enfilading his line. The employment of machine guns on such occasions may be most effective.

It is necessary that the leader should possess the power of quickly breaking off the fight and resuming it, if necessary, from some more effective direction. For this reason, as well as to secure mutual support, a complete system of communication between the Commander and all his subordinates is essential, led horses, as a rule, being kept, as close as possible.

In pursuit of a demoralized force, Light Horse may, by galloping well upon the enemy's flanks or rear, and with rapid fire action, be able to convert the pursuit into a rout.

The machine gun possesses the power of delivering a volume of concentrated rifle fire, which can be rapidly directed against any desired object. Rapid fire cannot be long sustained, owing to the expenditure of ammunition involved, and it is therefore necessary that the movements and fire action of these weapons should be regulated so as to enable them to open fire immediately a favorable opportunity arises. Surprise is an important factor in the employment of machine guns, which should be concealed, and whenever possible, provided with cover from fire.

Machine guns are best adapted for use at effective infantry ranges, but when good cover from fire and view exists, they may be usefully employed at close infantry ranges.

## INFORMATION.

---

### S. 314. *General Principles.*

1. **Timely information regarding the enemy's dispositions and the topographical features of the theatre of operations is an essential factor of success in war.** Systematic arrangements must always be made to insure that every possible source of information is fully utilized, that all information received is immediately transmitted to the proper quarter, and that it is carefully sifted before any conclusions are formed. This is the duty of the general staff.

2. Information in war may be obtained from maps and reports prepared in peace, by reconnaissance, by means of special agents, from statements of inhabitants, by tapping telephones or telegraphs, from newspapers, letters, telegraph files, and documents found in the area of operations, from statements of deserters, prisoners, and sick or wounded left behind by the enemy.

3. All documents captured from the enemy, or found in places recently occupied by the enemy, or by a hostile population, and any information obtained which may be of value, should be forwarded without delay to the nearest general staff officer. Should the captor or finder be unable to forward the documents immediately, he should make arrangements for their preservation and forward them as early as possible. The state-

nents of inhabitants, deserters, and other persons bringing information, should be taken down and similarly forwarded, and the persons themselves sent on as soon as possible.

4. Reconnaissance is the service of obtaining information with regard to :—

- i. The topographical features and resources of a country.
- ii. The movements and dispositions of an enemy.

In the latter case it may be strategical, tactical, or protective.

5. *Strategical reconnaissance* is required before the opposing armies are within striking distance of each other for the purpose of locating the hostile columns, ascertaining their strength and direction of march, and thus affording the Commander-in-Chief information on which to base his strategical plan of operations.

*Tactical reconnaissance* of the enemy is required when two forces are within striking distance of each other, for the purpose of discovering the tactical dispositions of the opposing force, and thus furnishing the commander with information on which to base his tactical plan of operations.

*Protective reconnaissance*\* is required by every force at all stages of the operations, whether at the halt or on the move, to ensure the security of the force against hostile enterprises and prevent the enemy gaining information.

Patrols whose objective is to *reconnoitre* the enemy, regulate their movements according to the position of the hostile forces ; on the other hand, patrols, flanking detachments, piquets, cossack posts, and similar posts of observation for *protective* purposes, regulate their movements with reference to the force covered. It is absolutely necessary that the two systems should be kept separate, and that each patrol should know clearly for which purpose it is intended.

\* Protective reconnaissance is dealt with under "Protection."



6. Whatever the nature of the reconnaissance may be, touch with an enemy, when once obtained, must never be lost without orders from superior authority.

S. 315. *Strategical Reconnaissance.*

1 To obtain for the Commander-in-Chief the information he requires, is the first duty of the independent cavalry, which will push into the zone separating the two armies in the direction in which it is desired to reconnoitre. In this area the hostile cavalry will usually be operating ; and until it has been disposed of, the independent cavalry will find it difficult to obtain satisfactory information regarding the enemy's columns. When the enemy's cavalry has been defeated, the independent cavalry will be free to concentrate its efforts upon breaking through the hostile covering troops and discovering the dispositions of the enemy's main forces. Other special tasks may also be assigned to the independent cavalry, such as intercepting the enemy's movements, raiding his communications, and seizing important strategical points. As much cavalry as possible should be detailed for these strategical missions, whilst for other purposes the number of squadrons should be reduced to what is actually necessary.

2. The commander of the independent cavalry will receive from the Commander-in-Chief definite instructions as to the rôle he is to fulfil, but should be allowed complete freedom of action in accomplishing it.

It may be advisable for the independent cavalry to avoid collision with the hostile cavalry when the latter is in superior force, provided such a course is compatible with the fulfilment of its primary duty, which is to obtain and communicate information as to the hostile main columns. In such cases the cavalry may sometimes be supported by detachments of infantry with advantage.

3. To obtain the requisite information, the independent cavalry commander will despatch such strategical patrols as may consider necessary towards the probable lines of the enemy's advance, and towards any places where signs of the enemy may be found. The number and strength of these detachments will vary with the circumstances of each case. The best suitable unit for actual reconnaissance and for maintaining touch is a patrol of from ten to twelve strong; larger units will find it difficult to escape observation.

When reconnoitring detachments have to proceed to considerable distances, and touch has to be maintained continuously several days, it will be necessary to employ one or more contact troops or contact squadrons to provide the patrols their chiefs and despatch riders. These units will also serve as havens of refuge for patrols, and as collecting stations for information. While the commander of a reconnoitring detachment must use every endeavour to insure the timely arrival of his information at head-quarters, the commanders of larger units following in his rear must assist him by pushing forward connecting posts or other detachments as the situation demands.

4. In country which is very enclosed or otherwise unfavorable to the employment of cavalry, detachments composed of infantry and cavalry will often give good results. The infantry is able to assist the cavalry in the actual fight, and affords the cavalry freedom to reconnoitre, even while its infantry is actually engaged with the enemy.

5. To enable commanders of detachments employed on this reconnaissance to distinguish between what is important and unimportant, they should be given all available information regarding the enemy, and be told the intentions of the superior commander.

S. 316. *Tactical Reconnaissance.*

1. Tactical reconnaissance is one of the most important duties of the protective cavalry, who when touch with the enemy gained will assume a **vigorous offensive**, drive in the enemy's advanced troops, and discover his dispositions and intentions. It may be necessary for the protective cavalry to concentrate to carry out this duty, in which they will be supported by the advanced guards of columns. The extent to which the independent cavalry will be able to co-operate with the protective cavalry in breaking through the enemy's covering troops at this stage, or when the opposing armies are drawing near each other, will depend upon the situation and the commander's plans. It will often be advisable to support the protective cavalry with infantry and artillery, in addition to the support which it is the duty of the advanced guards of columns to render, in order to tear aside the screen with which an enemy may have surrounded himself.

2. While the advanced troops are engaged with the enemy, information may also be obtained—

- i. By personal observation on the part of a commander.
- ii. By general staff or other officers, patrols, or scouts.
- iii. By observations from balloons.

The success of each of these forms of reconnaissance will depend to a great extent upon the thoroughness and energy with which the protective cavalry and the advanced guards have acted on coming in contact with the enemy. Reliable information as to the enemy's main forces will rarely be obtained without fighting.

3. Though reconnaissance has been here considered chiefly from the point of view of the cavalry, it is equally the duty

antry, when in touch with an enemy, to obtain all the information possible, both of an enemy and about the ground over which it may have to act.

S. 317. *Personal Reconnaissance by a Commander.*

1. The extent of ground occupied by a large force will often prevent its commander from personally reconnoitring the whole the ground on which his troops may be engaged. When this the case it may often be advisable that the personal reconnaissance by commanders should be limited to commanders of divisions and smaller units, and that the commander of the force should rely upon reports which have been rapidly transmitted from the front and prepared for him by his general staff. Personal reconnaissance which can only be partial may result too much importance being attached to what has been seen the expense of what has not been seen. A motor car will often enable a commander to reconnoitre rapidly an extended front, and a commander even of a large army should rarely omit to reconnoitre personally if it is possible for him to obtain thereby data for a comprehensive review of the situation.

2. Time spent in reconnaissance is seldom wasted ; and unless the situation demands instant action, a commander of a division or of a smaller unit should never commit his troops to engagement until he has made a personal survey of the ground before him.

S. 318. *Tactical Reconnaissance by Patrols.*

1. As the commander of a force will form his plan of action the result of the tactical reconnaissance, officers and scouts employed on it must be highly trained, have considerable technical knowledge, be quick and intelligent observers, be possessed of judgment and determination, and, if belonging to mounted arms, be well mounted.

2. The increased range of modern firearms compels scouts to keep further away from an enemy than formerly, thus making it more difficult to see and reconnoitre ; whilst the introduction of smokeless powder makes it difficult to locate him, even when his fire has been drawn. But if patrols have been in touch with the enemy during his march (when the number, strength and distribution of his columns can be more readily ascertained) it should be possible, by comparing their reports with those of the scouts engaged in tactical reconnaissance, to form a fairly accurate idea of the enemy's preliminary dispositions for battle.

3. General staff officers should be detailed to accompany the advanced troops, in order to assist in the tactical reconnaissance, and provide the commander with such information on special points as he may require. Commanders of divisional artillery or their representatives should take part in this reconnaissance.

4. When the opposing forces are near each other, and particularly when the country is close, infantry may often be employed with advantage to attract the enemy's attention by means of surprise attacks, and so enable patrols to pass through his covering troops at other points. Cavalry should be used for these patrols when the country is suitable and mobility can be turned to good account. If the conditions are unsuited to the employment of cavalry, infantry patrols and scouts should take its place.

#### S. 319. *Balloon Reconnaissance.*

1. The technical balloon officer should be told what information it is desired to obtain, and given as free a hand as possible as regards time and place of ascent. The observers should be fully acquainted with the situation and provided with the best maps and glasses procurable.

## 2. Captive balloons and kites may be employed—

- i. To obtain information of the enemy's position and of the movements of any considerable bodies of troops, when in such close touch that the cavalry can no longer make progress.
- ii. To obtain targets for and direct artillery fire.
- iii. To ascertain the position of our own troops on the field of battle.
- iv. To ascertain the nature of the ground to the front or to a flank.

3. The radius of action of a balloon under normal conditions ground and weather may be taken as from 5 to 6 miles. For extended reconnaissances a balloon should not ascend within miles of the enemy's artillery. For short observations, however, it may even ascend close to the most advanced troops. The detachment working the balloon must always be screened from the enemy's view ; and there must be cover from view for the balloon when close to or on the ground. Good observation artillery fire can usually be made at distances of 7,000 yards, further in the case of heavy artillery.

### S. 320. *Reconnaissance of a Position.*

1. In reconnoitring a position with a view to attack, information should be obtained on the following points regarding the ground :—

- i. The extent of the position.
- ii. The weak parts of the position.
- iii. Any point or points the capture of which will facilitate the development of a searching enfilade or reverse fire against a large extent of the position, and thus render it untenable ; and to what extent such point or points have been strengthened.

- iv. The best line of attack, and the tactical points of which the possession will favour the development of an effective fire against the weak parts of the position.
- v. Localities from which covering fire can be directed.

2. When it is intended to occupy a defensive position, the chief points to be noted are—

- i. The best line to be occupied by the infantry, and the means of protecting the flanks.
- ii. The positions for the artillery.
- iii. The positions which the enemy may endeavour to seize in order to develop an effective fire against the position.
- iv. The probable positions of the enemy's artillery.
- v. Any points the possession of which might exert a decisive influence on the issue of the fight.
- vi. The most favorable lines of attack.
- vii. The most favorable ground for the counter attack.
- viii. Ground to be occupied by the general reserve, by the cavalry, and by the other mounted troops.
- ix. Positions to be occupied in case of retreat.

#### S. 321. *Reconnaissance during Battle.*

When two forces are engaged the reconnaissance must be continued throughout the entire action, arrangements being always made for continuous observation of the enemy's movements and for the rapid transmission of reports. In addition to patrolling round his flanks and rear, to the work of infantry scouts and to the cavalry action on the flanks, general staff officers acquainted with the commander's intentions, should be posted at commanding points on the field of battle to communicate intelligence to head-quarters.

S. 322. *Transmission of Information.*

1. The value of information depends to a great extent on the length of time that has elapsed since the events occurred to which it relates. It is of the first importance that information should be communicated with the least possible delay to the commanders for whose benefit it is intended. The authority sending out reconnoitring detachments of any kind must therefore see that the means of communication are so organized as to insure rapid transmission of any information which those detachments may obtain.\*

An officer of the general staff with the independent cavalry should be specially charged with the duty of maintaining communication, under the direction of his commander, between the independent cavalry and Army Head-Quarters. But, to save delay, arrangements should be made to transmit all really important information direct from the reconnoitring detachments to Army Head-Quarters as well as through the usual channel. It will often be found convenient to arrange for relays from the divisional cavalry for the conveyance of information from the protective cavalry.

S. 323. *Method of Carrying out Reconnaissance.*

1. Reconnoitring forces consist usually of mounted troops, except when in close proximity to the enemy, when this duty may devolve on the Infantry. Their strength depends on the nature of their mission, due allowance being made for the transmission of reports. Not a man or horse more than is required should be employed. It should be remembered that a few bold men can often bring back information which a larger body of men would find it impossible to obtain.

\* For the methods of transmitting information, see Chapter II. Field Service Regulations, Part I.



2. The authority sending out a reconnoitring force should furnish its commander with instructions on the following points:

- (a) On what points information is specially required.
- (b) Approximately to what distance and in what direction he has to go.
- (c) About how long he may expect to be away.
- (d) Where he is to send in reports, and by what means.
- (e) What is known of the enemy.
- (f) The probable moves of his own main body or of other detachments.

3. After receiving his instructions and forming his plan of action to meet them, the commander should explain the whole or as much as may be desirable, to his subordinates, so that every man will know how to carry on the duty in the event of accidents. Common sense must guide the movement and conduct of a reconnoitring party. There is no fixed rule for the formation of a patrol or party for reconnaissance, but it should be arranged so as to be of the best form for obtaining information, and for avoiding capture.

4. Moving by night up to the neighbourhood of the enemy and then observing him from a concealed position by day, will often result in successful reconnaissance, which could not otherwise be carried out. Information may be obtained by capturing enemies' scouts engaged in similar work; this may often be effected by lying out for them in likely places at night and early dawn.

When moving by night or at dawn in an enemy's country, the commander must not allow his men to strike matches and create smoke.

When moving by day, every means must be taken to avoid being seen by the enemy, or by the inhabitants. If seen, the enemy should be deceived as to the commander's intentions. Patrols should move as little as possible on the roads, because they will be looked for on them. They should keep in the shadows as much as possible by day or at night. A bright button, and even the polished seat of a saddle, may disclose the presence of an otherwise hidden patrol. Every precaution must naturally be taken to prevent surprise when moving or halted. Small reconnoitring parties should not rest altogether in one place, but should remain scattered, so that all will not be captured at once if suddenly attacked.

5. The commander of a reconnoitring body must at all times take the necessary measures for the protection of his command against surprise.

6. He should, as a rule, endeavour to mislead the inhabitants as to his intentions, the direction of his march, and the purpose of his superior.

7. No man should carry any written instructions or private papers, or papers, such as might give information to an enemy if he were captured. Bogus notes may be carried for the purpose of misleading an enemy in such an event.

8. Any place that is likely to harbour an ambush, such as a wood, ravine, village, &c., if it cannot be passed by a flank move, must be approached with full precaution, that is, by sending advanced scouts forward or round it before getting the whole patrol within its reach. It is usually best for advanced scouts to move quickly when near such a position, and to get round the flanks and rear as rapidly as possible.

Advanced and flank scouts should have a free hand in carrying out their work of feeling the way for a patrol, and this is

best done by getting quickly from one good look-out point another, and then keeping hidden while they take a good look round to see if the ground is clear for another onward move.

9. If the enemy is not found where he was expected, *vice versa*, information to this effect should usually be sent back.

10. Patrols are not as a rule intended to fight, unless with the object of getting a prisoner for information, or for breaking through a weakly held point, and they must remember that such action generally draws attention to their presence, which is what they should avoid. The usual course on sighting an enemy's patrol would be to lie hidden and let it go by, keeping a look-out for capturing any orderlies it may send back with messages later on.

11. If a patrol is cut off by the enemy, its members must make every effort to get away, so that at least one may arrive back with the information already gained. If only threatened, the patrol should spread out and edge away until night comes on, then necessary breaking up and collecting again at the last halting place or other pre-arranged spot. For this reason, every member of a patrol, while advancing in an enemy's country, must take notice of all landmarks and distances as he goes along, as to be able to find his way back, alone if necessary, either to the last halting place or to the main body. In doing this, he should not adhere actually to the road by which he came, as that may lead him into ambuscades.

12. When scouts are sent to a long distance from the main patrols, they should usually work in pairs. Scouts and patrols must always be prepared to be out for several days.

13. Men who are accustomed in peace time, to work at night will succeed in scouting, where others will fail or lose their lives.

18. Patrols should not return by the same route as they go out by.

14. By training in peace time, officers and scouts should get to know what points to notice and what to reject in obtaining information.

Information may be gained by personal observation of the enemy; by questioning the inhabitants, prisoners, and others; by reading signs, such as tracks, dust, fires, deserted camp-grounds, uniforms; or by tapping telegraph wires, taking letters and newspapers from post-offices, &c.

15. In questioning prisoners, or hostile inhabitants, it is well to take them separately out of hearing of others, to let them suppose that you know a great deal more about the enemy than possibly you do know, and that you are putting some of these questions merely with a view to seeing whether they are speaking the truth or not, assuming that you know the answers.

16. People not accustomed to seeing large numbers of troops are very apt to exaggerate their strength, a point which a scout should be careful to avoid. Information as to the uniforms of the enemy, number of regiment on the buttons or badges, may be of use.

A scout should know what are the usual formations of the enemy, and what are the usual strengths of his different organizations.

17. If troops are moving along a road or defile, they may be counted while passing a certain point. For each minute, the following numbers would approximately go past:—

Cavalry at a walk, in fours .. .. .	120
Cavalry at a trot, in fours .. .. .	250
Artillery guns, or waggons, at a walk ..	5
Infantry, in fours .. .. .	200

18. Scouting cannot be learned from books, but only by the zeal, intelligence and practice of the man himself; a scout must be impressed with the feeling that, in practice as well as on service, he is implicitly trusted by his officer to carry out his work honestly; to attain success, he must combine great pluck with great cunning; he must be prepared to sacrifice himself if necessary, and in all cases the greatest personal credit and honour are open to him as the result of his work, whatever may be his rank.

19. A scout must be able to find the way in a strange country first, by practical map reading; second, by memory of the map; third, by knowledge of stars, sun, and compass, &c.; fourth, by landmarks; fifth, by questioning natives of the country. As maps may not always be available on service, scouts should be practised in working without their aid.

It should be a habit with him to notice the general direction taken and changes of direction subsequently made.

He should be practised in observing the same distant object both with and without glasses; in noting small signs or details both far away and underfoot; distant sounds and their meanings; in making uses of the senses of smell and hearing for night work.

It should be a point of honour with a scout that nobody should be able to draw his attention to any small detail either far or near that he has not already seen for himself.

His attention should be drawn to the great importance of taking cover and of selecting a background to suit the colour of his clothing, &c.; importance of remaining perfectly still; concealment of horse by making him lie down or keeping his head towards enemy; avoiding sky line; the use of trees in selecting look-out points when on the move, and getting from one good one to another quickly, and unseen.

A scout should know how to save his horse on a long reconnaissance; how to water, feed, and rest his horse; how to detect and how to treat lameness; how to prevent and how to treat galls.

20. The following should be noticed as affording information:—

*Clouds of dust* show movements of troops, or baggage, or cattle, &c. In some countries, it is customary to set fire to grass or bush so that the smoke may hide the dust of a movement.

*Fires.*—In many countries, also, it is customary to light signal fires to send up a flare by night, or puffs of smoke by day. This latter is done by lighting a damp fire, and alternately covering it with a blanket and uncovering it.

Such signals, when seen, naturally indicate the presence of an enemy; they may also often be used with advantage by our own look-out posts, scouts, &c.

The enemy's bivouac fires should be located, and counted in the evening or early morning. It is a common and useful practice to light dummy fires to deceive the enemy's scouts.

*Tracks.*—Tracking is an invaluable aid to scouting, and skill therein can be acquired only by constant practice.

Tracks, by the nature of the marks of the feet, hoofs, wheels, &c., give warning of enemy's patrols being about; show the formation, direction, and speed of his force, and are an indication as to the time when the force passed by.

*Sounds.*—Since much of a scout's work has to be done at night, it is necessary that he should not fail to make every use of his senses of hearing, and of smell, as well as of sight.

*Mirage.*—Heat vapour often causes curious effects on the appearance of open country, and these are very liable to deceive a scout who is not accustomed to them; lakes appear where there is no water, trees look like mountains, cattle like cavalry and so on.

*Vacated Camp Grounds.*—Much information can often be gained by visiting a camp ground recently vacated by enemy. The state of his troops, and commissariat, transport, &c., can be judged by what is left in the way of abandoned animals and vehicles, remains of food, fires, and signs of tents, hospital rubbish, and so on. The freshness of the camp can be judged by the droppings and ashes of the fires.

#### S. 324. *Reports.*

1. In reporting on an enemy, accuracy as regards time and places, the position, approximate strength, branch of the service, formation, and direction of march, &c., of the troops reported on, is of the first importance. Names should be hand printed.

2. A verbal report should be given without hurry or excitement, otherwise both hearer and speaker are liable to become confused.

Reports from strategical reconnoitring detachments should usually be in writing; those from tactical reconnoitring patrols will normally be verbal.

3. It is more important that the information contained in a report should be relevant and accurate, and should arrive in time to be of use, than that the report should be long and elaborate. This applies to written and to verbal reports and to sketches.

4. Common sense and a moderate capacity for sifting evidence should prevent inaccurate or misleading information being sent.

5. In furnishing information, a distinction must be clearly drawn between what is certain, and what is presumed or inferred. The source of information should be given, and the reasons for surmises.

6. Negative information and the repetition or confirmation of information-already sent are of importance. For a commander to know positively that the enemy was ~~not or was still~~ in a certain locality at a certain time may be of great value. It is often advisable that fixed times should be laid down for rendering reports containing information of this nature.

7. A plan or panorama sketch is a useful adjunct to a report, and it is often possible and convenient to dispense with the latter and to convey all essential information on the former. Clearness and relevancy are required, not artistic effect. Ranges inwards to conspicuous points should as far as possible be indicated in such sketches.

A plan sketch should be drawn roughly to scale, the scale being indicated both by drawing and in words.

Important points, *e.g.*, width of a road or stream, whether a railway is single or double, &c., should be described in words or figures.

The true north should always be indicated.

A table of conventional signs used in military sketches is given in the "*Manual of Map Reading and Field Sketching.*"

The place from which such a panorama sketch is executed, and the direction in which the sketcher is looking, should be clearly indicated.



S. 325. *Details for Reports.*

The following are some of the points to be noticed in furnishing reports :—

It is not intended that the reconnoiterer should be limited by these ; he should add to them any further points of value.

*Ambush.*—Notice any likely place and describe nature of cover, *i.e.*, whether bush, wall, rock, ditch, &c. ; how near to the enemy's line of approach, way out.

*Bivouac.*—State how sheltered or concealed, nature of ground surrounding ground, water, fuel, defensibility, exits, &c.

*Bridge.*—Material, length, width, height above water, parapet (and its height, material, &c.), whether capable of bearing heavy traffic, such as motor transport, &c., nearest repairing materials, nature of river (see River) approaches.

*Buildings.*—Height, length, material, roof, water-supply surrounding ground, fences, command of view, outhouses thickness of walls.

*Bush.*—Extent, height, nature, density, paths.

*Canal.*—See River.

*Camp Ground.*—Extent of ground, whether flat or sloping water, nature of soil, fuel, defensibility, neighbouring supplies proximity to roads, &c.

*Country.*—Whether flat, undulating, hilly, open or enclosed cultivated or not, thickly or thinly inhabited, soil, surface, and nature of roads, railways, telegraphs, landmarks (such as churches and windmills), whether suitable to moves of troops off the roads, villages and farms ; defiles, rivers, bridges, &c.

*Defile.*—Nature, whether commanded by neighbouring ground, length, width, ground, on near side and beyond defile ground for flanking parties, &c.

*Enemy.*—Numbers, how far off, which direction, what arm what doing, at what time seen.

*Ferries.*—Number of boats, how worked, how far across, approaches, facilities for loading, material for rafts, &c.

*Fords.*—Depth, bottom, distance across, whether straight or zig-zag, nature of banks, surrounding ground, velocity of current, leading marks.

*Forest.*—Extent, height, and nature of trees, paths, density.

*Forts.*—Extent, situation, material, how armed, height of rampart, depth and width of ditch, surrounding ground, neighbouring heights, best line of approach, water, garrison.

*Hills.*—Height, steepness, surface (whether rocky, grassy, wooded), what view, whether concave or convex.

*Lake.*—Extent (that is, length and breadth), depth, banks, boats, surrounding ground.

*Look-out Places.*—Nature (whether trees, tower, hill, &c.), height, way out, what other points visible for signalling purposes, &c.

*Marsh.*—Extent, where passable, ways round.

*Mountain.*—See Hill.

*Nullah.*—See Ravine.

*Position.*—Nature (whether ridge, fort, village, wood, &c.), width and depth. Nature of ground in front and on flanks, field of fire, artillery positions, own and enemy's. Neighbouring heights, how occupied, best line of approach for attacking force, position of water, lines of retreat, facilities for counter attack, nature of soil for digging, lateral communications.

*Railway.*—Number of lines, gauge between the rails, sleepers (whether wood, iron, or pans), embankments, cuttings, tunnels, bridges (with their material and dimensions), means for destruction and repair, capability of transport for troops, description of stations, sidings, crossing places, &c.

*Ravine.*—Depth, width, nature of banks (whether bushy or rock, &c.) See also Defile.

*Redoubt.*—See Fort.

*River.*—Depth, width, current, nature of banks, nature of bottom, watering places, crossings, positions for covering crossing, boats, materials for rafts, whether navigable, liable to rise and fall of water, bridges, ferries, fords, locks, &c.

*Road.*—Nature (whether made or unmade), width, height above surrounding country, fences alongside, condition, gradients, material for repairs.

*Station.*—See Buildings. State number of platforms, their length and width, number of entrances and sidings, forming-up places in the vicinity, amount of coal, spare rolling-stock, rails, sleepers, water tanks, telegraphs, how lit up at night.

*Supplies.*—Amount of food available for men, such as meat, groceries, fuel, and forage, such as oats, meals, grain, barley, hay, grass.

*Telegraph.*—Number of wires, height of poles and their material, direction in which the line runs.

*Town.*—Extent, that is, length and width, number of inhabitants or houses, post and telegraph offices, forges, material, &c. (see Buildings), situation (see Position), water and gas supplies, also food supplies (as above).

*Transport.*—Number of waggons, carts, mules, horses, camels, oxen, trucks, boats, carriers, engines, &c.

*Village.*—See Town.

*Water.*—Whether good for drinking, flowing or stagnant, whether stream, pool, or well, size, and depth, how many horses can drink at one time, whether buckets are required.

*Wells.*—Depth to bottom, depth to water; width, means for hauling water.

*Woods.*—See Forest.

## PROTECTION.

S. 326. *General Principles.*

1. **Every commander is responsible for the protection of his command against surprise.** A force can only be regarded as secure, when protection is furnished in every direction from which attack is possible.

2. The method of protecting troops is the same at all times and in all circumstances. — Detachments are thrown out by the commander of the body to be protected; these detachments provide for their own safety by furnishing detachments from themselves, the same process being repeated in turn by each body that is thrown out, until eventually a series of small groups is reached.

3. **The commander of each protecting detachment, wherever situated, must keep his command at all times ready for action.**

4. The commander of a protecting detachment is responsible that connexion with the force protected is maintained, except in warfare in uncivilized countries. In the event of attack, he must at all risks and at any sacrifice gain time for the body he immediately protects, to prepare to meet the attack.

5. The fact of cavalry being in advance does not necessarily afford security to the troops in rear. If the enemy be enterprising and strong in mounted troops, he may find an opportunity of avoiding the protective cavalry and suddenly attack the columns in rear. Local protection can, therefore, never be dispensed with.

6. At the end of a march, the troops that have covered the march remain responsible for the protection of the main body while at rest, unless other arrangements are made by the

commander of the force; and, *vice versâ*, when the march recommences, outposts must not be withdrawn till the troops detailed for the protection of the march are in position.

7. In the following pages, the protection of a force of all arms is chiefly considered, The principles laid down are of general application, and hold good for mounted troops or infantry, acting independently of the other arms.

## PROTECTION ON THE MARCH.

### S. 327. *The First Line of Protection.*

1. The mounted troops of an army form the chief means at the disposal of its commander for obtaining information and for protecting his advance. They are divided according to the nature of their duties, into three distinct bodies—

- i. The independent cavalry.\*
- ii. The protective cavalry.
- iii. The divisional cavalry.

The fundamental principle in the distribution of cavalry is that the Commander-in-Chief in order to gain full value from that arm must clearly determine what he requires of it, and group his units accordingly in a suitable manner and in sufficient strength. Circumstances may, therefore, require the reinforcement of the independent cavalry by the protective cavalry and *vice versâ*.

---

\* The independent cavalry is "independent" only in the sense that it is at the immediate disposal of the Commander-in-Chief and is not charged with the direct protection of any slower moving body of troops. It co-operates with other troops in giving effect to the will of the Commander-in-Chief, as much as any other formation.

The protection of the army against hostile enterprises is, to a certain extent, secured by the defeat of the enemy's cavalry; but in order that the independent cavalry may not be tied to the army, the duty of covering the main columns is normally entrusted to the protective cavalry, which thus furnishes the first line of protection; local protection on the march being afforded by *Advanced, Rear and Flank Guards*, and when at rest by *Outposts*.

—2. The protective cavalry, which will usually be accompanied by mounted infantry and horse artillery, will, subject to the above principle of distribution, act under the direct orders of the commander of the army to which it belongs.

The divisional cavalry acts under the direct orders of the divisional commander. Its duty is to assist the infantry in the **immediate** protection of the division by supplying mounted men for patrolling in connexion with advanced guards, flank guards, rear guards, and outposts; to maintain connexion with the protective cavalry and neighbouring columns; to furnish escorts, orderlies, despatch riders, and facilitate inter-communication generally.

3. When the opposing forces are at a distance the duties of the protective cavalry are—

- i. To afford the commander of the force it may be covering timely information regarding the enemy's approach.
- ii. To furnish information regarding tactical features, resources, and roads of the country in advance of the main body.
- iii. To oppose hostile enterprises and prevent the enemy obtaining information regarding the movement of the columns in rear.

The protective cavalry may also be employed to seize and hold positions in front of the slower moving infantry and deny their occupation to the enemy until the main body arrives.

4. These functions of the protective cavalry will entail principally defensive action, and will necessitate extension over a considerable front, but the commander must dispose his force in sufficient depth to enable it, with the assistance of the advanced guards of the columns in rear, to check any attempt to break through and surprise the main body.

5. When the opposing forces are within striking distance of each other, it becomes the duty of the cavalry to clear up the tactical situation. This will usually involve offensive action and be the work of the protective cavalry, assisted by the independent cavalry and other advanced troops as the general situation permits. **The protective cavalry best assures the safety of the force it covers by keeping the enemy continuously under observation when contact with him has once been gained.**

6. The protective cavalry is normally organized into mounted brigades. When it is desired to strengthen the first line of protection, for example, in order to cover the advance of a number of columns through difficult country, one or more mounted brigades may be attached to a division, or a mounted brigade may be temporarily strengthened by the addition of field artillery and infantry. The body so formed is called a strategic advanced guard; a commander for it is appointed, and its composition and duties are determined by the authority who orders its formation. A strategic advanced guard is normally formed for a specific purpose, and its composition is not changed daily as is usually the case with a tactical advanced guard.

## THE TACTICAL ADVANCED GUARD.

§. 328. *Composition, and Strength of an Advanced Guard to a Force Advancing.*

1. Every body of troops advancing through a country in which it is possible that an enemy may be encountered, will be preceded by a tactical advanced guard. When at a distance from the enemy, a force may for facility of subsistence and for the comfort of the troops be divided into a number of columns and march on a broad front. It is then convenient for each column to provide for its own protection. When approaching the enemy, unity of action becomes important, the force moves on a narrower front, and a single advanced guard detailed from a complete unit is then usually preferable for the protection of the larger units (divisions, &c.).

2. The strength of the advanced guard will be proportionate to the strength of the main body. It may vary from a fourth to an eighth of the whole force, but it should be sufficient to enable the advanced guard to carry out its duties.

3. An advanced guard is divided into a van guard and a main guard. As it has to reconnoitre and fight, it will usually be composed of all arms. The proportion of each arm will depend chiefly on the character of the country. In an open country, the proportion of mounted troops and guns may be much greater than in a close or mountainous country.

4. The special duty of the van guard is reconnaissance. It will, therefore, generally be composed of the advanced guard mounted troops, with or without a body of infantry as a support. By day, when the country is open and the advanced guard is strong in mounted troops, infantry will not as a rule form part of the van guard. Field artillery will seldom accompany it, but a party of engineers should usually be added.



The main guard comprises the troops of the advanced guard not allotted to the van guard.

S. 329. *Advanced Guard Commander.*

1. The advanced guard commander, on taking over his duties, should be informed of what is known of the enemy, of the strength and composition of the advanced guard, and of the intentions of the commander. He should receive clear instructions as to engaging the enemy, if he is met in any force.

2. On receipt of his instructions, the advanced guard commander will issue his orders. In these he will explain the general situation, the route to be followed, the composition of the vanguard and main guard, the order of march, and the hour of starting.

3. He will take steps to insure that connexion is maintained between the different parts of the advanced guard, and also with the main body.

S. 330. *Action of an Advanced Guard to a Force Advancing.*

1. **The advanced guard must protect the main body from the moment the march of the latter begins.** The advanced guard commander will therefore decide the hour at which the advanced guard will clear the starting point and the distance at which it will precede the main body. This distance will vary with the nature of the country and the tactical situation. It should be sufficient to enable the main body to deploy should the enemy be met in force, and to admit of minor opposition being brushed aside without checking the main column.

2. It is most important that when an enemy is met the commander of the force should have information on which to base his plans and time to put them into execution when they are

formed: **The first troops to be met will be the enemy's advanced troops and until these have been brushed aside nothing definite can be known.** It is the duty of advanced guards to assist the mounted troops, when necessary, in driving in the enemy's covering troops.

If the commander of the force has decided on offensive action the advanced guard commander should secure any tactical points which may assist the development of the attack of the main body. To effect this it is justifiable for him to deploy on a broader front than would be advisable for a force of the same size entering on a decisive action, for every moment brings the main body closer. It is important that the advanced guard artillery position should be chosen with a view to the subsequent action of the artillery of the main body. Should the commander of the force wish to avoid being drawn into a decisive engagement, the advanced guard commander will use all means at his disposal, short of committing the main body, to delay and hamper the enemy and to discover his dispositions. If the advanced guard commander is in any doubt as to the intentions of the commander of the force, he must act on his own initiative, remembering that by driving in the enemy's advanced troops at once he will usually assist the commander of the force in coming to a decision and that this will rarely interfere with the latter's liberty of action, while hesitation and delay may do so by allowing the enemy to seize the initiative.

3. The van guard is responsible for protecting the main guard against surprise. In open country mounted patrols should seldom be less than 4 or 5 miles in front of the main body. In any case all ground within effective field artillery range must be searched. The advanced guard mounted troops should always keep in communication with the protective cavalry, and with columns moving on parallel roads. If constant connexion

between two columns is difficult to maintain, arrangements should be made between them for communicating at stated places or intervals of time during the march.

### S. 331. *Advanced Guard in a Retreat.*

1. It is always advisable to have a small advanced guard to a retreating force. Its special duty is to clear away obstacles that would delay the march. But it should observe all precautions against surprise, and should be invariably accompanied by some mounted men for scouting purposes. A party of engineers should be attached for the removal of obstacles, or the preparation of bridges, &c., for demolition after the rear guard has passed.

2. Should it be possible for the enemy to intercept the head of the retreating column, a strong advanced guard of all arms will be required.

### THE FLANK GUARD.

#### S. 332. *General Principles.*

1. If there is any possibility of a column on the march being attacked in flank, flank guards should be detailed. They will usually be furnished by the main body, but may sometimes be dropped by the advanced guard.

2. The strength, composition, and dispositions of a flank guard and its distance from the main body are governed by the principles which apply to all protecting detachments. The flank guard may either move parallel to the main body, or take up a position on the threatened flank. A flank guard may be required to hold its own without support until the main body and transport have passed.

3. Should the main body change direction so that the march becomes a flank march (*i.e.*, a march across the enemy's front), it will generally be advisable to use the old advanced guard as a flank guard, and to form a new advanced guard from the main body.

### THE REAR GUARD.

#### S. 333. *Duties, Composition, and Strength of the Rear Guard to a Retreating Force.*

1. The first requirement of a defeated force is to be relieved from the pressure of pursuit. This is effected by detaching a portion of the force, the strength of which will depend on the situation, as a rear guard to impede the enemy's advance. The remainder of the force is thus enabled to move in comparative safety, and to recover order and *morale*.

2. A rear guard to a force retreating is essentially a fighting force of all arms. It will usually be very strong in artillery and mounted troops. Artillery, by reason of its long range, is able to force the enemy to deploy at a distance, whilst mounted troops, on account of their mobility, can hold a position considerably longer than infantry, and prevent the flanks from being turned. A rear guard should be lightly equipped, and should usually be accompanied by a strong detachment of engineers provided with demolition equipment. The troops detailed for the rear guard will, as a rule, be those which have been least severely engaged.

3. The commander of a rear guard is appointed by the commander of the force to be protected. He should receive instructions as to what extent he is at liberty to break down bridges, burn villages, and destroy railways, with a view to impeding the enemy's progress.

4. When the pursuit is not close, the disposition of a rear guard on the line of march will resemble that of an advanced guard reversed; a *rear party*, usually composed of mounted men, having been formed, the remainder of the troops, when not engaged, generally move as a main guard, in the order in which they can most readily come into action.

S. 334. *Action of a Rear Guard to a Retreating Force.*

1. The conduct of a rear guard, more perhaps than any other operation in war, depends for its success on the skill and energy of the commander.

2. A rear guard carries out its mission best by compelling the enemy's troops to halt and deploy for attack as frequently, and at as great a distance, as possible. It can usually effect this by taking up a succession of defensive positions which the enemy must attack or turn. When the enemy's dispositions are nearly complete, the rear guard moves off by successive retirements, each party as it falls back covering the retirement of the next by its fire. This action is repeated on the next favorable ground. All this consumes time, and time is what is most needed by a retreating force. A rear guard may also effectively check an enemy by attacking his advanced troops as they emerge from a defile or from difficult country.

3. In occupying rear guard positions it is important— (i.) to show as strong a front as possible to the enemy; (ii.) to make sure of good lines of retreat.

4. The manner of occupying a rear guard position differs from that of occupying a position meant to be resolutely defended, in that the greater part of the force should be in the fighting line from the outset, a proportionately small part being retained in reserve, and as great a display of force as possible being made.

5. Mounted troops should usually be employed wide on the flanks, so as to watch the country by which the enemy might advance, and to be able to forestall any attempt to pass between the rear guard and the main body.

6. The first consideration in selecting a position for the artillery is, that it shall be able to open fire on an enemy at long range, and thus compel his infantry to assume an extended formation at the greatest possible distance. The second is that it should be possible to withdraw without difficulty.

7. A point of great importance to the commander of a rear guard is to judge accurately the proper time to retire. He must constantly bear in mind the difficulty of withdrawing infantry that has once become engaged. If he retires too soon he is only partly carrying out the work required from the rear guard; on the other hand if he falls into the error of trying to dispute every inch of ground he may become seriously involved and run the risk of being cut off from the main body, or oblige the latter to halt and reinforce him.

8. When a rear guard halts to fight, every moment separates it further from the main body, whereas with a pursuing force every moment brings its reinforcements closer; in regulating the distance of the main guard from the main body the chance of the enemy interposing between the two must be considered.

The distance, however, must be sufficient to prevent the main body being shelled by the enemy. This is especially important during the passage of a defile.

The commander of the main body should periodically keep the commander of the rear guard informed of his progress, and *vice versâ*.

9. It is always advisable to send an officer to the rear to note the next favorable position for defence on the line of retreat. The lines of retirement from position to position should not converge.

The positions should be sufficiently far apart to induce the enemy, after seizing one, to reform column of route before advancing against the next.

10. Before withdrawing from a position, arrangement should be made to cover the retirement of the portion of the rear guard which is still engaged, by the disposition of the troops that have already retired.

S. 335. *Expedients for Delaying an Enemy's Advance.*

1. With a view to delaying the enemy's advance, the following expedients may be resorted to:—

- i. Narrow roads, &c., can be blocked by locking together several waggons and removing one or more of the wheels, or by felling trees across them.
- ii. Fords may be rendered impassable by throwing in ploughs, harrows, &c.
- iii. Boats may be removed to the side of the river further from the enemy and sunk or burnt.
- iv. Villages, woods, heather, scrub, &c., if the circumstances demand it, may be set on fire by the rear party, so as to conceal the movements of the rear guard and impede the enemy's advance.

2. Skilfully laid ambushes will cause the enemy to move with caution in pursuit.

S. 336. *Rear Guard to a Force Advancing.*

1. If there is any chance of the rear of an advancing column being exposed to the enemy's attacks, the rear guard may be composed of all arms and must be sufficiently strong to meet all emergencies.

If it is to be employed only in collecting stragglers and keeping off marauders, it is usually composed of infantry with sometimes a few mounted troops added for watching the flanks.

2. If the main body, second line transport, and transport and supply columns march without any considerable distance between them, one rear guard will usually suffice for the whole; but if for any reason there is a considerable distance, the rear guard will follow the main body, and special arrangements will be made for the protection of the transport.

S. 337. *To Tell off a Squadron as an Advanced Guard.*

(For Instructional Purposes only.)

Squadron Leader's Orders.	{	"1st Troop—Prove."	"ADVANCED	}	Vanguard.
		PARTY."	"As you were."		
		"2nd Troop—Prove."	"SUPPORT."		
		"As you were."			
		"3rd and 4th Troop—Prove."	"RE-		
	}	SERVE."	"As you were."	}	Main Guard.

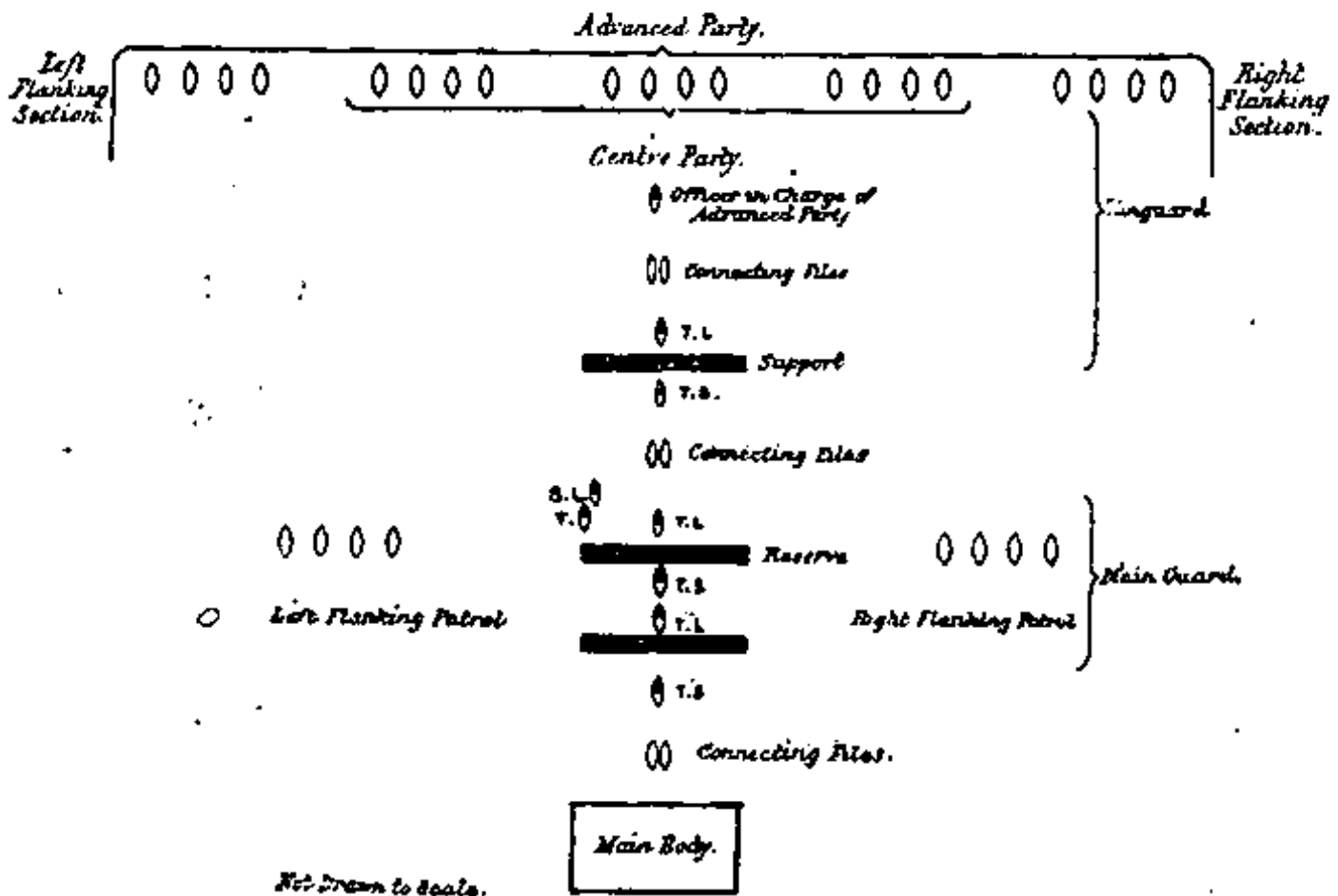
After the squadron is told off, the troop leader detailed as "Advanced party" will tell off his flanking sections as follows:—  
 "Right section—Prove." "RIGHT FLANK SECTION—As you were."  
 "Left section—Prove." "LEFT FLANK SECTION—As you were."  
 "Centre sections (or centre section)—Prove." "CENTRE PARTY—As you were."  
 "Nos. — and — — Prove." "CONNECTING FILE WITH SUPPORT—As you were."

The troop leader detailed as "Support" will tell off a connecting file thus:—  
 "Nos. — and — — Prove." "CONNECTING FILE WITH RESERVE—As you were."



The officer commanding the reserve will then detail flanking patrols thus:—"Right section of 3rd Troop—*Prove.*" "RIGHT FLANKING PATROL—*As you were.*" "Left section of 4th Troop—*Prove.*" "LEFT FLANKING PATROL—*As you were.*"

DIAGRAM SHOWING A FORM OF ADVANCED GUARD IN OPEN COUNTRY.



*A Rear guard and Flank guard are similarly disposed to the above.*

In close country the Support and Reserve would probably be compelled to move in Column of Route, and the Sections of the Advanced Party and the Flanking Patrols would be more effective and less likely to be surprised if in "Diamond Formation" (see following diagram), opened out as far as possible consistent with their keeping touch.

## DIAMOND FORMATION.

No. 2

0

No. 4 0                      0 No. 1

0

No. 3

~~PROTECTION WHEN AT REST.~~

## Outposts.

S. 338. *General Principles and Rules.*

1. Every body of troops when halted will be protected by outposts, in order that it may rest undisturbed.
2. If the enemy is close at hand and battle imminent, or if the battle ceases only at nightfall to be renewed next day, the whole of the troops must be in complete readiness for action. There may not even be room for outposts, and the troops will have to bivouac in their battle positions, protected only by patrols and sentries. In such cases, the firing line practically takes the place of the outposts.
3. It will often occur, under these conditions, that no orders can be issued as to measures of protection by superior authority; and, in any case, nothing can relieve the commanders of the advanced battalions and companies of the responsibility of securing themselves from surprise, and, unless circumstances forbid, of keeping touch with the enemy by means of patrols.
4. The duties of the outposts are:—
  - i. To provide protection against surprise.
  - ii. In case of attack, to gain time for the commander of the force to put his plan of action into execution.

5. If an enemy is so continuously watched that he can make no movement without being observed, surprise will be impossible. The first duty, therefore, of the outposts is **reconnaissance**.

6. All partial attacks must be warded off, and the enemy's troops must be prevented from approaching within effective field artillery range of the ground on which the main body will deploy if attacked. The second duty, therefore, is **resistance**.

7. Outpost duty is most exhausting. Not a man nor horse more than is absolutely needed should be employed.\*

8. **To see without being seen is one of the first principles of outpost duty.** All troops on outpost must, therefore, be carefully concealed.

9. No compliments will be paid and no bugle or trumpet call is to be sounded.

10. Detachments in close proximity to the enemy must be careful to avoid useless collisions. Attempts to carry off detached posts, sentries, &c., unless with some special object in view, are to be avoided, as they serve no good end, give rise to reprisals, and tend to disturb the main body.

11. All bodies of troops on outpost must observe the rules laid down for the sanitation of camps and bivouacs. Latrines and refuse pits must be prepared. The extent of the sanitary arrangements will depend on the time the outpost position is likely to be occupied.

S. 339. *Definition of terms used on Outpost Duty (Mounted Troops.)*

*A Cossack Post.*—A single sentry and his relief, *i.e.*, three men (one on sentry, two in relief), under a leader.

\* If more than one-sixth of the force is employed, the efficiency of the troops will suffer.

*A Piquet.*—A body of men generally a troop, formed of the non-commissioned officers and men not required for the Cossack posts. It furnishes a dismounted "look out sentry" who will watch the line of Cossack posts, and report signals to the officer commanding the piquet; also connecting sentries, if necessary.

*Supports and Reserves.*—Stronger bodies in rear of line of Cossack posts and piquets to assist them to resist attack.

*A Standing Patrol.*—Consists of a small party sent beyond the outposts, usually by night, which conceals itself near a probable line of approach to give warning of an enemy's advance.

*A Reconnoitring Patrol.*—Consists of a section under its leader, or a small body under an officer, which is sent beyond the line of Cossack posts, to patrol in the direction of the enemy, and reconnoitre the ground, and gain information of the enemy.

*A Detached Post.*—Consists of one or two sections under a non-commissioned officer, generally placed on the flank of the line of outposts to protect the flank, or to hold any point of especial tactical importance.

N.B.—Piquets are numbered from the right of their respective squadrons, and Cossack posts from the right of their respective piquets.

#### S. 340. *Position of the Outposts.*

1. When there is any possibility of a force coming in conflict with an enemy, its commander should, when halting for the night, first decide on his dispositions in case of attack, and then arrange the quartering of his command and the position of the outposts accordingly.

2. It is an advantage if an outpost position includes commanding ground from which a wide extent of country can, in

clear weather, be kept under observation by day. Facilities for observation, however, are of less importance than facilities for protracted resistance, provided the ground in front be well patrolled. The distance of the outpost position from the main body is regulated by the time which the main body requires to prepare for action, and by the necessity of preventing the enemy's artillery from interfering with the freedom of movement of the main body. Commanding ground is advantageous but by no means essential.

3. Command, co-operation, and intercommunication will be facilitated by placing the advanced troops along well defined natural features, such as ridges, streams, the outer edges of woods, &c., or in the vicinity of roads, but this must not be allowed to outweigh the necessity for making the best tactical dispositions possible.

4. In enclosed country and at night, the movements of troops are generally confined to the roads and tracks, which should be carefully watched.

5. If the outpost position is extensive, it may be divided into sections, each section being allotted to a certain number of companies, sections being numbered from the right. The extent of a section depends upon the amount of ground which can be supervised conveniently by one commander.

The extent of frontage to be allotted to each company will depend on the defensive capabilities of the outpost position and, where they exist, on the number of approaches to be guarded.

6. The outpost position will invariably be strengthened as communications improved where necessary. Piquets and supports will do this without waiting for definite orders.

S. 341. *Composition of the Outposts.*

1. In the case of large forces, or when a force is scattered, the outposts are usually furnished from each division or brigade in the front line. The commander of the force divides the ground to be covered between his subordinate commanders, who detail the commander of the outposts and the outpost troops for their portion. Under other circumstances the commander of the force may decide to detail the whole of the outpost troops, in which case he will also detail the commander of the outposts.

2. The outposts of a force of all arms consist of *Outpost Mounted Troops*, *Outpost Companies*, and, when necessary, *The Reserve*. Machine guns will generally be included and sometimes artillery.

Outpost mounted troops are usually provided by the divisional cavalry, and may be attached to sections of the outposts or to outpost companies for reconnoitring purposes, and to keep touch with the protective cavalry by day; **but economy must be exercised in employing mounted troops for outpost duties.**

3. When stationary, the duty of local protection by night will fall almost entirely on the infantry, most of the outpost mounted troops being withdrawn, their place in this case being with the reserve, if there be one. In certain cases, however, standing mounted patrols may be left out at night with advantage.

4. Artillery may be usefully employed with outposts if they occupy the ground which the main body is to hold in case of attack; if there is limited ground over which the enemy must pass; or if it is important to prevent the enemy from occupying artillery positions within close field artillery range of the outposts. Except when the outposts occupy the battle position more guns should not be employed than can be easily and rapidly withdrawn. Artillery will be withdrawn at night, except when with the reserve.

Machine guns with outposts may be employed to sweep approaches, and to cover ground which an enemy in advance may be compelled to pass or occupy.

5. When a force is on the march the troops for outpost duty should be detailed before the march is completed.

### S. 342. *Commander of the Outposts.*

1. The commander of the outposts should be told, before the force has halted, what is known of the enemy, and of other bodies of our own troops; the intentions of the commander, who appoints him, if the enemy attacks; where the force to be covered will halt; the general position to be occupied by the outposts; whether there are other outpost troops on his flank; the composition of the outposts, and the hour at which they will be relieved.

2. As soon as he has received his instructions he will give orders either verbally or in writing such orders as are immediately necessary for the occupation of the outpost line. He will supplement these by detailed orders on the following points as soon as possible :—

- i. Information of the enemy and of our own troops so far as they affect the outposts.
- ii. Ground to be occupied by main body in case of attack.
- iii. General positions to be occupied by the outpost line, division into sections, if necessary; frontage, number of roads, allotted to each outpost company or to each section; and situation of the reserve.
- iv. Disposition of the outpost mounted troops (see S. 346).
- v. Dispositions in case of attack. Generally the line of resistance, and the degree of resistance to be offered.

- vi. Special arrangements by night.
- vii. Smoking, lighting fires, and cooking.
- viii. The hour at which the outposts will be relieved.
- ix. His own position.

3. As soon as the outposts are in position he will inform the commander who appointed him, and furnish him with a rough sketch showing his dispositions.

S. 343. *Distribution of the Outposts.*

1. The commander of the outposts will assign a definite part of the outpost position to each outpost company.\* Should it be necessary to divide the outpost position into sections, the commander of the outposts will appoint commanders of sections, who will, in that case, divide their sections among their outpost companies. The limits of ground allotted to sections of the outposts or to outpost companies should be marked by some distinctive feature, such as trees, cottages, streams, &c. Each company should know what roads it is expected to guard, and the exact limits of the ground it is to patrol. Outpost companies provide piquets or detached posts and their supports.
2. The commander of an outpost company, having received orders, will move his command with the usual precautions to the ground allotted to it, where the company will be halted under cover, the covering troops holding a line a short distance in advance of the most suitable position for the piquets. He will then examine the ground, decide on the number and position of the piquets, and on the position of the support, which should, as far as possible, be composed of a complete command,

\* In the following sections, companies only are referred to. The principles are equally applicable to outpost squadrons, if squadrons have to do the work laid down for outpost companies, as would happen with mounted troops acting independently, employed in front of the main outpost position.



*e.g.*, a half-company, or section. These will then be moved in their allotted positions, and the necessary groups and sentries posted and patrols sent out, after which the covering troops will be withdrawn.

A single sentry will be posted over the support.

He will give instructions to the commanders of piquets and detached posts, and will make arrangements for a protracted resistance by selecting a good defensive position which should, if possible, correspond with the piquet line; it should support, and be supported by, the companies on either hand.

He will send out patrols to examine the country in front, and will communicate with the companies on the flanks of his position. He must ascertain the dispositions of those companies as to insure no ground being unprotected.

He will satisfy himself that his company is acting with due vigilance during its tour of duty, visiting the various parts thereof to ensure this, but should limit as much as possible any movement in the line of sentries which might be visible to an enemy.

As soon as he has made his dispositions he will send in a report accompanied by a rough sketch, to the commander of the outposts, or if the outpost line is divided into sections, then to the commander of the section in which his company is, which section commander will send in a similar report concerning his section to the commander of the outposts.

#### S. 344. *The Reserve.*

1. A reserve will be used only when the outpost force is large or when the outposts hold the ground to be occupied by the main body in case of attack.

2. If required, it will be detailed by the commander who appoints the outpost commander, and should always be formed a complete unit, with mounted troops and generally some guns attached.

It may often be advisable to divide the reserve into two or ten more parts, when, for instance, the outpost position is very extensive or the country intersected or difficult.

4. If no reserve is specially detailed, an inlying piquet of the necessary strength will be found by the command which furnished the outpost troops.

#### S. 345. *Piquets.*

1. As soon as a piquet commander has received his orders he will explain them to his piquet, and will satisfy himself that every man knows the direction of the enemy, the position of the next piquets and of the support, what he is to do in case of attack by day or by night, whether there is any cavalry in front; and that sentries know in addition the position of the sentries on their right and left, the position of the piquet and of any attached posts in the neighbourhood; the ground they have to watch; how they are to deal with persons approaching their posts; the names of all villages, rivers, &c., in view, and the places to which roads and railways lead.

2. Sentries in the front line are posted in groups,\* which consist of from three to six men, under a non-commissioned officer or the oldest soldier, and should be relieved every eight or twelve hours. In open country one man is posted as a sentry, while

---

If it is desired to retain more men with the piquet, sentries may be posted in pairs, the men of each pair being close to or within speaking distance of each other, according to the ground. There should be three reliefs for each double sentry, one on duty while the other two are with the piquet. This system has the disadvantage of causing more movement in the line of sentries, and of entailing more fatigue on the

the remainder lie down close at hand ; but if the country is close or special precautions are necessary, the sentry post may be doubled. A sentry post, as a general rule, should not be more than about a quarter-of-a-mile from the piquet. Sentry posts should be placed so as to gain a clear view over the ground in front of their front, whilst concealed from the enemy's view.

3. A sentry will immediately warn his group of the approach of any person or party. When the nearest person is within speaking distance the sentry will call out "*Halt*," covering himself with his rifle. The group commander will then deal with the person or party according to the instructions received by him. Any person not obeying the sentry, or attempting to make good after being challenged, will be fired upon without hesitation. A single sentry will be posted over each piquet.

#### S. 346. *Mounted Piquets and Sentries.*

In addition to the principles laid down in s, 342 the following apply to mounted troops :—

- i. Cossack posts are equivalent to sentry groups. The sentry, as a rule, dismounts, his horse being kept with the other horses of the post. The reliefs of sentry always dismount, and remain as close to the sentry as practicable.
- ii. By night the sentry should be doubled and the post increased accordingly.
- iii. Cossack posts never off-saddle ; the horses must never be unbridled, and everything must be ready for instant action.
- iv. Cossack posts are relieved every 6, 12, or 24 hours according to weather, shelter, water, &c.

- v. Feeding and watering are to be carried out by one-third of a piquet or detached post at a time. Horses that are to be fed must be taken a short distance away from the others.
- vi. The horses of a piquet or detached post are never to be unsaddled or unbridled at night. During the day, when matters seem quiet, girths should be loosened, and saddles shifted, one-third at a time.

S. 347. *Detached Posts.*

1. Detached posts from an outpost company are sometimes avoidable; but as there is always the danger of their being cut off, they should not be employed except in case of necessity.
2. They usually consist of from six to twelve men under a non-commissioned officer or officer, but may be stronger. Such posts may be placed in front of or in rear of the extreme flank of the outpost position, to watch some particular place or road by which the flank might be turned, or they may be placed in advance of the sentry line to watch some spot where the enemy might collect preparatory to an attack, or which he might occupy for purposes of observation.
3. They should act in the same manner as laid down for piquets.

S. 348. *Traffic through the Outposts.*

1. No one other than troops on duty, prisoners, deserters, and flags of truce will be allowed to pass through the outposts either from within or from without, except under the authority of the commander, who details the outposts, or of the commander-in-chief.

2. No one is allowed to speak, otherwise than as directed in section 345 (3), to persons presenting themselves at the outpost line except the commanders of the nearest piquet and outpost company, who should confine their conversation to what is essential, and the commander of the outposts. Prisoners, and deserters, will be sent at once, under escort, through the command of the outpost company, to the commander of the outposts.

3. In civilized countries, where, for tactical reasons, no piquet is posted on a main line of traffic, a detached post should be posted specially to deal with traffic through the outposts. Such detached posts will be detailed by the commander of the outpost company in whose section the main line of traffic lies.

#### S. 349. *Flags of Truce.*

1. On approach of a flag of truce, one sentry, or more, if in hand, will advance and halt it at such distance as to prevent any of the party who compose it overlooking the posts; he will detain the flag of truce until instructions are received from the commander of the outpost company.

2. If permission is given for it to pass the outposts, the individuals bearing it must first be blindfolded, and then led under escort to the commander of the outposts. No conversation except by his permission is to be allowed on any subject, under any pretence, with the persons bearing the flag of truce.

3. If the flag of truce is merely the bearer of a letter or parcel the commander of the outpost company must receive it, and instantly forward it to head-quarters. The flag of truce having taken a receipt, will be required forthwith to depart, and no one must be allowed to hold any conversation with the party.

S. 350. *Intercommunication.*

Communication must be maintained at all times between all parts of an outpost position, and between the outposts and the main body. Communication may be by signal or by orderly.

The commander of the outposts is responsible for communication with the main body ; supports will keep up communication with their piquets, with the supports on either flank, and with the reserve. - Piquets or detached posts will maintain communication with the piquets or posts on either flank. - Commanders of piquets will satisfy themselves that sentries are alert and understand their duties, but should limit, as much as possible, any movements in the line of sentries which might be visible to an enemy.

In close country it may be advisable to post from a support a communicating sentry between it and the piquets, and also one between a piquet and its Cossack posts.

S. 351. *Readiness for Action.*

1. The commander of the outposts will decide whether the reserve is to occupy quarters or to bivouac, and whether the supports or reserves may take off accoutrements, off-saddle, unhook and unharness teams, &c.

2. Piquets will invariably be ready for action. The men must never lay aside their accoutrements. Mounted men attached to an infantry piquet should, whenever possible, be off-saddle ; but one man should always be ready for instant action.

3. Not more than a few men should be allowed to leave the piquet for any purpose at one time. They should never be allowed to move about, in or front of the sentry line when seeking water, fuel, forage, &c.

4. The outposts will stand to arms one hour before sunrise, and remain under arms until the patrols, which should be sent out at that time, report that there is no sign of an immediate attack. Care should be taken that these patrols remain out till after daybreak. When the outposts are relieved in the morning, the relief should reach the outposts half-an-hour before sunrise. The troops relieved will not return to camp until the patrols report all clear.

#### S. 352. *Reconnoitring Patrols.*

1. Reconnoitring patrols are sent out from the outposts with the object of searching the country in front of the outpost position, or of watching the enemy if the opposing forces are in close touch. Their strength may be from two to eight men, under a non-commissioned officer. They may consist of mounted men, cyclists, or infantry.

2. When mounted patrols are employed they should move out before daylight and patrol all approaches which an enemy might use, within distant field artillery range of the position. When the opposing forces are in close touch, mounted patrols should maintain constant touch with the hostile force. When ordered to remain out in observation in front of the outposts they become *standing patrols*.

3. In a country where the roads are good, cyclists may replace mounted patrols, and by night they are especially suited for this work.

4. As reconnoitring patrols are not intended to fight, but to discover the approach of an enemy, vigilance, silence, and prudence are to be strictly enjoined. Their duties are to see without being seen.

5. When touch of the enemy is obtained, or anything suspicious observed, the leader of the patrol will send back a man to report; but before doing so he should get as much information as possible.

6. All woods, ravines, or broken ground in the neighbourhood of the outposts, where troops could collect without being observed, or scouts or spies find concealment, should be frequently visited by patrols.

7. If mounted troops from the outpost line are patrolling to the front, it should seldom be necessary to send out infantry patrols by day, unless the country is very thick or the weather misty. At night the duty of patrolling will, as a rule, fall on the infantry. Such patrols should move along tracks or roads in the direction of the enemy for about a mile, and should search all ground where the enemy's scouts might conceal themselves. It may occasionally be advisable to leave out standing infantry patrols to watch certain points in front of the out post position, instead of sending out patrols at stated periods.

8. An outpost patrol, when going out, informs the nearest sentry of the direction it is taking. In the event of a patrol not returning when expected, another should be immediately sent out. If a force halts for more than a day in one place, the hours at which the patrols go out (except those before sunrise), and also the direction of their route, should be changed daily.



S. 353. *Standing Patrols.*

Standing patrols are formed by two to eight mounted men or cyclists under a non-commissioned officer sent well in advance to watch either the principal approaches, or some particular points where the enemy could concentrate unseen. Their positions are fixed, and they remain out for several hours. They are of the utmost value, especially at night, and spare the horses as they are not constantly in movement. The rules for Cossack posts regarding off-saddling apply to standing patrols. Occasionally standing patrols are employed by infantry.

The commander of the outposts will issue orders as to the employment of standing patrols.

S. 354. *To tell off a Squadron for Outpost Duty.*

*(For Instructional Purposes only.)*

Squadron  
Leader's  
Orders.

"1st Troop—Prove." "To furnish No. 1 Piquet with 2 Cossack Posts, and a Reconnoitring Patrol, and Sentry over Piquet, under Lieut. ———." "As you were."

"2nd Troop—Prove." "To furnish No. 2 Piquet with 2 Cossack Posts, and a Reconnoitring Patrol, and Sentry over Piquet, under Lieut. ———." "As you were."

"3rd and 4th Troops—Prove." "To furnish Support under Lieut. ———; Sentry over Support, and also to strengthen Piquets when required." "As you were."\*

"Piquet Commanders and Officers commanding support tell off your parties."

\* Detached posts when required will be furnished from the support.

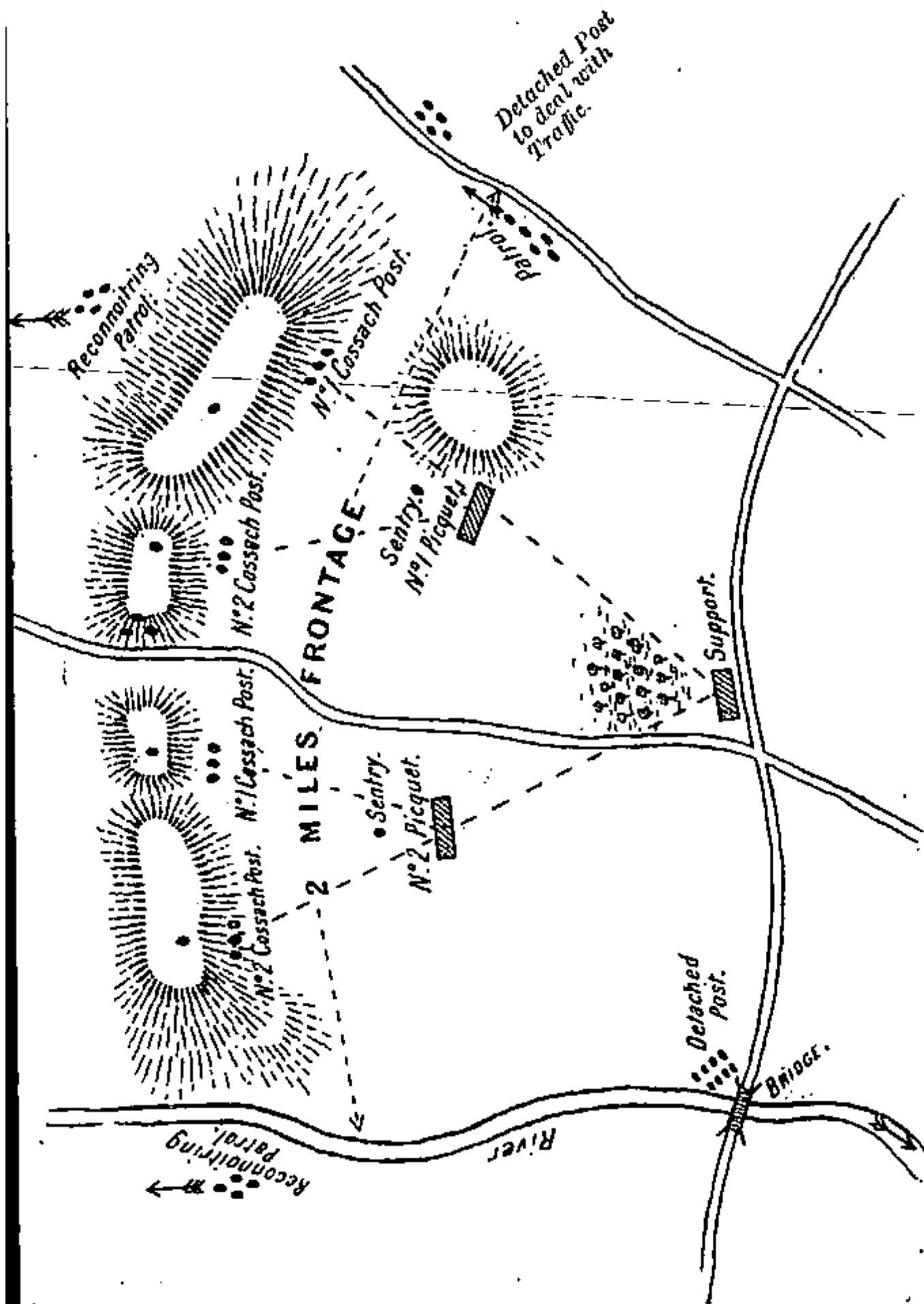


Diagram illustrating the disposition of a Squadron on Outpost Duty.

## MARCHING.

S. 355. *General Remarks.*

The first and most important consideration is a good and properly fitted saddle. The weight which the soldier has necessarily to carry cannot be distributed or carried *without detriment to the horse* unless upon a specially-constructed saddle; without such a saddle it may be taken for granted that it is practically impossible to maintain any mounted troops efficient upon active service in the field.

The greatest care should be taken before a march that the saddlery is in proper order so far as circumstances admit.

Horses should invariably be walked in going up or down hill.

Columns should, when circumstances admit, be in half-section each man upon the outside of the road (*i.e.*, "*Divide the Road*")

The important points to note are—

- (1) That each man sits square and steady on his horse.
- (2) That no buckle, strap, or portion of the rolled blanket or cloak touches the backbone of the horse behind, and that the front of the saddle is well above the crest and withers in front, and that no strap or article which may chafe or injure be allowed to get under the saddle.
- (3) That the saddle is properly girthed up.
- (4) Horses are to be ridden on all four reins, and made to "ride" up to their bits, either at a walk or trot.

Men whose horses require to be re-shod, or who, for any cause, are compelled to fall out, will rejoin at a steady pace.

S. 356. *Instructions for Long Distance and Forced Marches.*

The following routine is given as a guide for instructional purposes :—

## (a) FIRST HOUR.

*Start*

Walk 5

Trot 10

Walk 5

Trot 10

30 minutes— $3\frac{3}{4}$  miles.

Short halt 5

March on foot 10

Trot 15

Tighten girths, look over saddles, shoes, &amp;c.—

30 minutes— $2\frac{1}{4}$  miles.

## (b) SECOND HOUR.

Walk 10

Trot 5

Short halt 5

March on foot 10

Trot 10

Walk 5

Trot 15

30 minutes— $2\frac{1}{4}$  miles.30 minutes— $3\frac{3}{4}$  miles.

Long halt for half-an-hour and small feed.

The variations of the marching must be adapted to circumstances, such as state of the roads, the physical nature of the country, and the condition of the horses ; but the general principles indicated in the above routine for marching will be invariably observed.

The steadiness and regularity of pace is an all-essential factor in a successful march. In turning corners, or in passing obstacles, the pace of the front of a column must be slackened to prevent the rear having to close up at a quickened pace. The

trot is the pace at which mounted troops can move at a quickened rate with the least detriment to the horse's condition, and with least chance of causing saddle galls.

At a slow trot, if properly carried out, the horseman should support the whole weight of his body upon the inside of his thighs, and the soles of his feet resting in the stirrups. He should never allow the body during the trot to touch the actual seat of his saddle; leaning forward, he will in this manner relieve his horse's back of the weight of his body, except so far as it is evenly distributed over the side bars of the saddle resting upon the ribs.

By careful attention to the principles above indicated, and by *constant care*, forced marches of from 40 to 50 miles may be made for short periods, without serious detriment to the efficiency of horses or men.

In general, it may be calculated that mounted troops should march at the rate of about 5 miles an hour, including short halts.

The last 2 miles or so of a day's march should always be traversed at a walk, so as to bring the horses in cool.

#### S. 357. *Rules to be Observed.*

It will be noted that by the routine laid down the horse is relieved of the weight of the man and his arms for a quarter of an hour in each hour, and the free circulation of the blood is thus allowed into the skin of the back under the saddle—one of the surest preventatives of sore backs.

There should be a half-hour's halt, the "long halt," after every two hours' marching. In a prolonged march after four hours the horses should be fed.

Every opportunity should be taken during a march of allowing horses to graze or nibble grass during halts.

Upon approaching the proposed watering-place, an officer should be sent forward to ascertain the most suitable means for watering, and the formation best adapted to the approaches to, or situation of, the watering-place.

If a watering-place is available on the road, the horses should be watered a mile or two from their destination.

In tropical climates, or hot weather, the nostrils and mouth should be wiped and moistened.

5. *Special Duties and Discipline on Line of March.*—There is no occasion on which the discipline of a regiment is more tried, nor on which the attention and vigilance of every officer in maintaining order and regularity are more especially requisite, than upon the line of march. Officers must be careful to preserve the compact order of a column of route by not allowing irregular distances, straggling, or falling out, except during the periodical halts.

In the case of ordinary marches, unless under exceptional circumstances, or in very hot weather, it is not advisable that mounted troops should march at a very early hour. It is always desirable that time should be given for the men to breakfast, and the horses to feed well before starting.

All parties of mounted troops should invariably march off at *Attention*. The commanding officer will afterwards use his discretion in allowing the party to march at ease. But before arrival at the destination, and always in passing through towns, the party must be called to attention.

The ordinary length of a day's march for mounted troops may be reckoned at from 15 to 20 miles, but of course on active service, or even in cases of emergency in time of peace, this distance may often have to be considerably increased. Provided the pace

is not unduly hurried, the more quickly a march is completed, under ordinary circumstances, the better it will be both for man and horse.

6. *Billeting*.—If billeted in a town, the time at which the saddles are to be taken off should be announced and an alarm post fixed by the officer in command of the party before the men are dismissed to their billets. No officer should leave the parade until the men are told off to their billets and the alarm post notified.

7. *Inspection of Horses*.—The squadron officers must visit the whole of the stables in which their horses are billeted. Troop parades also will be arranged by them when necessary.

If a swelling or heat is noticed on a horse's back and no skin is broken, the most simple remedy to adopt is to put over it a cloth wetted with salt and water, the cloth being kept on by the surcingle and a pad of straw. The mixture should not be made too strong in salt. If the skin is broken cold water only should be used. In bad cases of sore backs veterinary advice should, if possible, be obtained. The panels must be carefully brushed and dried; saddle blankets, numnahs, should be beaten lightly and also dried.

8. *Arms*.—In billets, when on the march, all arms should be removed from the stables and taken with the men to their rooms.

## S. 358. TRANSPORT BY RAIL.

### *General.*

Instructions with regard to the transport by rail of personnel, horses, guns, stores, &c., are contained in "The Service Regulations Part I. Operations 1909." These are to be carefully

studied, and, in so far as they apply, to any particular case, and are not varied herein, followed.

The following detail, and words of command are intended to afford a general idea of the system, and of the drill, to be adopted in carrying out this work.

The actual method must, of course, vary according to circumstances, such as the size and position of the station, platform, train, &c. The absolute necessity for the quiet, expeditious systematic and careful performance of the operations must, however, be fully realized by officers, and impressed upon their subordinates. Irrelevant talking must not be allowed, though in this duty it will be necessary for men, at times, to speak to each other in order to facilitate the handling of horses. Each separate step should be conducted under the supervision of, and by distinct words of command from, the responsible officers.

The entrainment or detraining of horses (including officers' chargers), guns, waggons and stores should, as far as practicable, be conducted simultaneously. All animals, vehicles and material should be loaded before the entrainment of men is commenced.

Men must be kept well in hand during the work, and smoking prohibited.

#### *Entraining and Detraining of Personnel and Horses.*

For short journeys horses should usually remain saddled or harnessed. For journeys occupying over six hours horses should be (unless an attack is anticipated) unsaddled or unharnessed, and the saddlery or harness packed in vans.



On arrival at the entraining station, units will be formed up in the positions indicated by the Entraining Officer, and the men dismounted. The procedure then will be on the following lines :—

*Even Numbers Lay Down Arms.*—The odd numbers hold the horses while the even numbers deposit their rifles, &c., 3 yards in rear of the horses, or at other selected spot, in the order in which they stand in the ranks.

*Odd Numbers Lay Down Arms.*—The even numbers hold the horses while the odd numbers similarly deposit their arms, &c.

*Adjust Stirrups.*—This will be done by running up the stirrups to the top of the leathers, and then securing them by passing the ends of the leathers through them. If the saddles are to be removed, this command will be followed by the command "*Off Saddle.*" The even numbers will unsaddle first and then the odd numbers, and the saddles will be placed with the rifles.

*From the Right Tell Off by Twelves* (or by some other number according to the number of horses to be conveyed in each truck). This command will be given if the trucks are of uniform size.

*From the Right (or Left) Number Off Twelves.*—The right hand man of each twelve will tell off the number of his twelve, according to the position it holds in the ranks.

*To Your Trucks by Single Files from the Right of Twelves, Walk-March.*—The twelves file off, and number 1 of each twelve leads his horse into the truck bearing the number of his twelve; the remainder of his twelve following in succession. One man should be left in charge of rifles, saddles, &c. Halters will be left on horses, and (if horses have been unsaddled) the bridles removed and retained by the men during the journey.

The following is the best and safest method of putting a troublesome horse into a truck :—One man leads horse at full extent of halter, two men hook hands well down behind the horse's buttocks. Hands are hooked by each man bending the second joints of the fingers of one hand thus making a hook of the hand, then interlocking his hand with the hooked hand of the other man. At the same time as hands are hooked these two men will place their other hands on the sides of the horse, then lifting the horse's hindquarters, shove it into the truck. Assistance should be given by extra men pushing at the horse's rump and on his sides. One of the men with hooked hands should give the word to shove.

If the trucks are not uniform in size it will not be practicable to tell off by truck sections of any uniform number, and the leader must in this case use his initiative in securing expedition ; so far as is practicable, the loading of all trucks should be carried out simultaneously.

Also during peace training, in proceeding to camps, &c., troop trains will frequently pick up detachments at different stations, and this will necessitate a variation of the procedure.

Further, when returning from camps, &c., in the case where detachments are dropped at different stations, squadrons should march out with the horses for each respective station together, those for the first reached station being in rear, and so on in succession to the front. In this case trucks should be marked with the names of stations instead of numbers, the last truck being for the station first reached, and so on in succession towards the front of the train.

Horses should be placed in the trucks with heads and tails alternately in opposite directions,

When a truck is not filled with horses, they should be closely packed up, and a stout rope stretched taut from side to side of the truck along the side of the last loaded horse, so as to support it, and thereby support the other horses.

*Fall in on Your Arms.*—The men fall in at attention, in rear of, or as near as possible to their arms.

*Take Up Arms.*—If saddles have been removed, the command will be "*Take Up Saddles and Arms,*" and men will then be marched to the saddle van where saddles will be deposited, the men filing out and being then formed up opposite the carriages. N.C. Officers falling in in line with their troops.

*From the Right Tell Off by Eights* (or by any number corresponding to the number of men to be conveyed in each compartment).

*Flanks of Eights Prove.*

*As You Were.*

*Right (or left) Turn, File to Your Carriages, Quick March.*—The leading eight files into the compartment nearest the end of the train towards which the men have been turned, the remainder filing into their respective compartments in succession.

In detraining horses, men will be formed up facing the trucks in which their horses are, and ordered to "*Sling Arms.*"

*Untruck Horses.*—Horses will be led out of each truck (trucks being unloaded simultaneously where practicable) by two men, each man receiving his own horse as it comes out of the truck. On receiving his horse each man will lead it off the platform (at once, if practicable), and fall in at the place indicated.

If horses have been unsaddled, then when the men detrain, a party under a N.C. Officer, should be immediately told off (a

uniform number being taken from each troop) to unload saddlery. Saddles will be laid out on the platform with as much spread as possible. When the men with led horses have fallen in, odd numbers will be ordered to get their saddles, and when they have done so, the even numbers will get theirs.

Once entrained, no man is to leave his carriage without the permission of an officer.

Officers will not entrain until all the men have entrained.

Absolute quietness is to be maintained as the train moves off.

On arrival at destination, officers will at once detrain, troop leaders proceeding at once to the carriages in which their men are. On a pre-arranged signal (whistle sound or one "G") men will detrain.

A travelling horse piquet will invariably be furnished. It should be so detailed as to be composed of soldiers occupying the same compartment. Its duty will be to take charge of the horses *en route*, and to attend to them in case of mishaps, such as a horse getting down, &c. Two men at least will be on duty during each relief. They will visit all the horse trucks and boxes at all stopping places, as far as practicable. Should it appear necessary to have the train delayed in starting from any station, in order that anything amiss with the horses may be attended to, the N.C.O. in charge of the piquet will be informed at once, and he will, in turn, immediately inform the officer in command of the troops. The men of a relief must remain awake during their tour of duty, and after dark be provided with a lantern.

At all entrainings and detrainings a medical and a veterinary officer should be present, if practicable.

## S. 359. TRANSPORT BY SEA.

Detailed instructions as regards the embarkation, disembarkation, and the duties on board ship should be carefully studied by the staff and squadron officers.

Standing orders—printed, if possible—should be drawn up beforehand and published, so that all ranks may thoroughly understand the routine of embarkation and the duties on board ship.

## S. 360. CROSSING RIVERS.

1. *Fording*.—The selection of a ford and the crossing of rivers with mounted troops are operations requiring experience and care.

If the fords are deep and dangerous, the bits should be removed from the horses' mouths, and the men warned to disengage their feet from the stirrups, being at the same time reminded of the principles necessary if required to swim. It may sometimes be advisable to station a few expert swimmers and a rope at or below the ford.

The following depths are fordable :—

For infantry, 3 feet.

For cavalry, 4 feet.

Waggons containing ammunition, 2 feet 4 inches.

Gravelly bottoms are best, sandy bottoms are bad, as the sand gets stirred up, and increases the depth.

The depth of a river is generally most uniform in straight parts; at bends the depth will generally be greater at the concave bank, and less at the convex.

For this reason a river which is not anywhere fordable straight across may be found passable in a slanting direction between two bends.

A raft capable of carrying 13 horses can be constructed of four piers, each consisting of seven (100-gallon) casks, bearing a platform 30 feet long and 10 feet wide, provided with a rail removable at the two ends, but firmly fixed at the sides.

The horses should be ridden on to the raft along a roadway (supported if necessary by piers) which need not be wider than 6 feet in the clear, but must be long enough to reach from the shore to water of sufficient depth to float the raft.

As each horse is placed in its position across the raft, the rider will dismount and stand to his horse's head.

The raft should be guided by a cable stretched from shore to shore, led through two snatch-blocks attached to the raft and can be hauled across by men or horses.

On reaching the further side, the horses should be led ashore.

4. *Rules to be observed by Troops in passing over Pontoon Bridges.*—Columns of infantry, artillery, waggons, and mounted troops should not be mixed together in passing a bridge.

Mounted troops will, as a rule, cross in single file or half sections, but never at a faster pace than the walk. All horses should be dismounted, when crossing the bridge, and led across, except those ridden by drivers, who should remain mounted.

Wheel carriages of all kinds with trained horses, are to cross fully horsed; with unsteady horses, carriages must be passed over by hand.

Halting on a bridge is to be avoided. If it be absolutely necessary to halt on a pontoon bridge, gun wheels must rest as nearly as possible midway between two boats. Artillery should cross at increased distances. If the bridge sways so as to become very unsteady, the column must be halted and not allowed to resume its movement until the swaying has ceased.

These rules apply to all suspension, military, spar, and floating bridges.

Officers will incur grave responsibility if they cross a bridge otherwise than in the way recommended by the engineer officer in charge.

### S. 361. PITCHING AND STRIKING OF TENTS.

#### 1. *Pitching and Striking a Circular Tent with Six Men.*

1. Tent parties will consist of one N.C.O. and six men.
2. The pole men having been paraded, and the tents brought up, the following procedure will be carried out :—

Firstly—

No. 1 the pole man drives a peg into the ground where the pole will rest.

No. 2 joins the two pieces of pole together, and hands them to No. 1.

No. 3 and 4 distribute the tent pegs.

No. 5 and 6 unpack the tent, door uppermost, facing the front. The fly is fastened.

Secondly—

No. 1 takes the pole, placing the end between his heels.

No. 2 drives cap on the pole.

Nos. 3, 4, 5, and 6 hold the four ropes to secure the tent when raised.

## Thirdly—

Nos. 1 and 2, when the bugle sounds one "G," or at "Raise tents," will raise the pole, No. 1 getting inside to hold it steady and straight.

Nos. 3, 4, 5, and 6 drive the pegs, commencing with the angle ropes.

If the tent has storm guys, they will be fixed, and ends placed over four pegs driven at right angles to one another, 5 yards from the pole, making four corners. If the tent has no storm guys the four red runners will be held, each by a man, the N.C.O. seeing that the door points the proper way, and that the fly is fastened.

3. *Striking a Circular Tent.*—On the command "Prepare to strike tents," No. 1 gets inside the tent; No. 2 closes the door, and keeps it closed until the tent is struck.

Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6 will pull out and place in the bag all the pegs, except the four angle ones, which they will afterwards draw, and hold on to the ropes, Nos. 3 and 4 the front ones, Nos. 5 and 6 the rear ones.

On the bugle sounding the one "G," or on command "Strike tents," No. 1 will lower the tent towards the rear. No. 2 will separate the pole into two pieces, and tie them together.

Nos. 3, 4, 5, 6 will spread out the tent neatly, the ropes being rolled up round the sides, and then placed so that they do not appear when the tent is folded up.

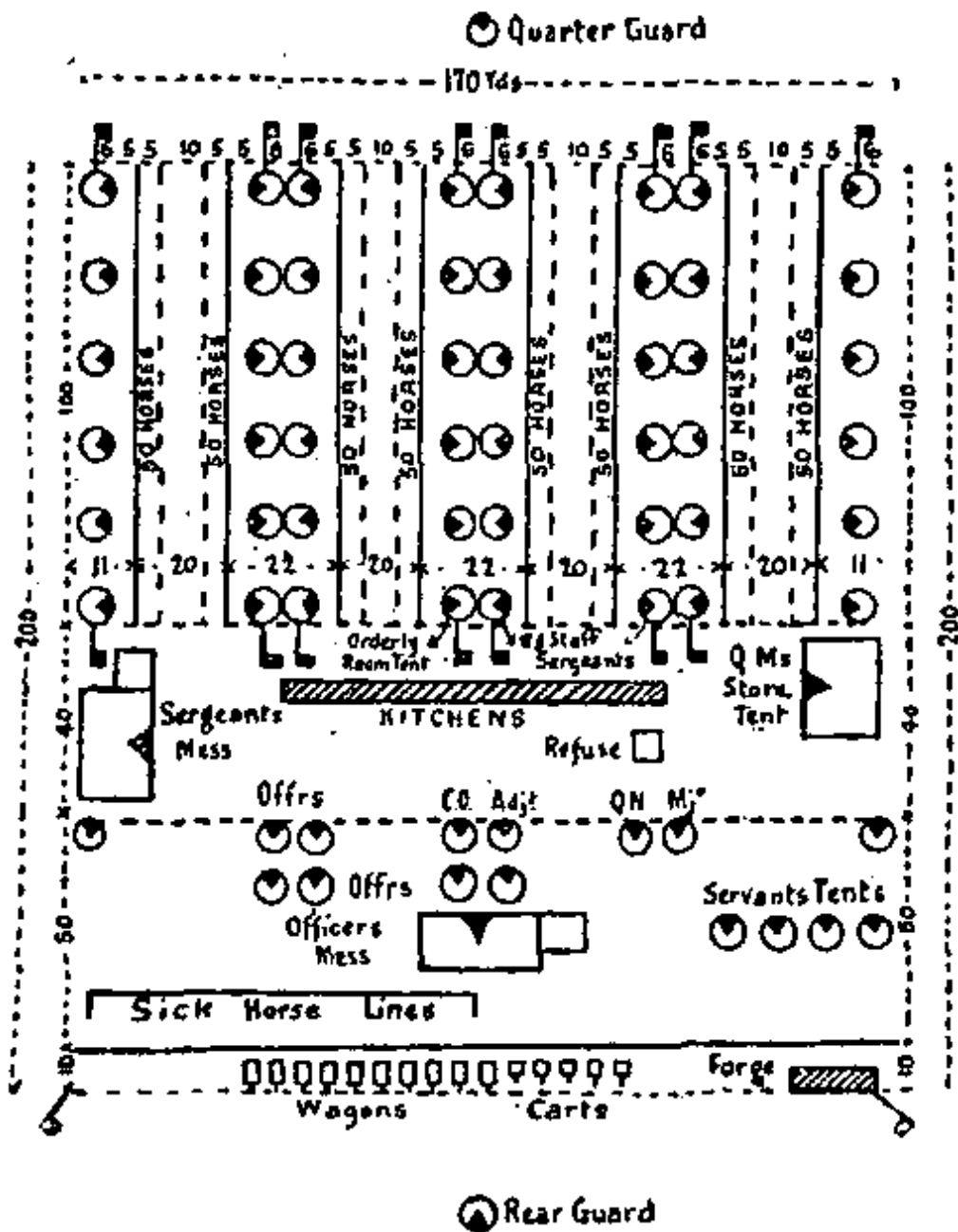
The sides will then be folded to the centre until the breadth required for the depth of the tent bag is arrived at.

The head will then be folded down to the front about half-way, after which Nos. 5 and 6 will both proceed to roll from head to bottom, placing their knees on the tent as they roll it.



When rolled up tightly, No. 6 will hold the bag, No. 5 will lift one end of the roll until it is got into the mouth of the valise, when it will be got into a perpendicular position, and both men holding the mouth of the valise will shake the tent into it.

The peg bag, &c., will be put inside, and the whole secured at the top.



## APPENDIX I.

## INSTRUCTION IN THE USE OF THE SWORD.

(For Practice in connexion with Tournaments, Skill-at-Arms Competitions, &c.)

S. 362. *General Principles.*

1. In teaching mounted swordsmanship, the following principles will be kept in view :—

- (a) The paramount importance of the point or thrust.
- (b) To attack rather than to await an attack, and to deliver it with dash, vigour, and determination.
- (c) After parrying an attack, to immediately return with the point.
- (d) To make every possible use of the horse.

In teaching swordsmanship on these lines no set "sword exercise" is allowed. Inspections will take the form of tests for skill in pointing at dummies, balls, &c.; dismounted assault, and mounted combat; the whole attention being directed towards teaching men to *fight*.

Notwithstanding the supreme importance attached to the point, it is not intended that the cut should be entirely ignored.

The recruit must not be allowed to cut until he has become so accustomed to thrust that his impulse in a *mélée* will be to attack with the "point."

2. A recruit will first be instructed in the use of the sword on foot.

If a man can fight on foot, instruction in mounted fighting (assuming he is a good horseman) is a comparatively simple matter.

3. "Laying" for points and cuts is prohibited.

4. For instructional purposes "Swords, Practice Gymnasia" should always be used; the single stick never.

5. The main stages to be followed in teaching Mounted Swordsmanship are as follows:—

#### 1st Stage.

Fighting on foot.

Eliminating the intricacies of the art as much as possible, also anything that is not applicable to mounted work.

#### 2nd Stage.

The various points and parries in any direction; from the mounted position on foot, or (preferably) on low dummy horses.

#### 3rd Stage.

Practical cuts. Position as in 2nd Stage.

#### 4th Stage.

The use of the sword mounted is taught: First, by pointing at the instructor, dummies, &c., together with the parries and "feints"; then, by using the horse in mounted swordsmanship and, finally, by practising the actual mounted combat, when cuts may be allowed, but only in "return," and at the adversary's neck or cheek.

6. Swordsmanship cannot be taught without individual instruction. The best way to give this is by the method of "instructor and pupil," followed by two pupils opposing one another under the instructor's supervision.

In order to obtain satisfactory results, three or four pupils are the most an instructor can take at a time, and the same instructor should, if possible, take the same pupils through the complete course of instruction.

7. Great importance is attached to the "assaulting lessons," as by their means men are given a combative spirit and are enabled to see, step by step, the fighting application of each detail which they have been taught. These exercises also relieve the dulness of routine work, encourage the spirit of emulation, and give, from quite an early stage of instruction, some idea of actual fighting.

#### S. 363. *Parts of the Sword.*

The sword, a weapon for thrusting and occasionally for cutting, is made up of two parts, viz., hilt and blade.

The HILT serves to protect the hand, and also to assist in turning an attack. It is made up of the "guard" (or shell) and the "handle" (or grip).

The blade, from hilt to point, is divided into *forte*, *feeble*, and *middle*. The "forte" is that part of the blade nearest the hilt; the "feeble" the part nearest the point; and the "middle" is the part between the forte and feeble.

#### S. 364. *1st Stage.*

1.) Details of Positions and Movements used in Dismounted Fighting.

The instructions in the details of the various positions and movements have been abbreviated as much as possible, as extreme accuracy in them is not required. The positions and movements must, however, be learned from a specially trained

instructor, who will carefully avoid any idea of drill, and devote himself to practical individual instruction in the use of the sword for *fighting* purposes. Time should not, therefore, be wasted over the detail, but the instructor will push the men on to the practical lessons of "Instructor and Pupil," taking care to observe the order of lessons as laid down for the Dismounted Fighting, and to gradually improve the pupil's execution of the movements as he progresses from lesson to lesson.

*Method of grasping the Practice Sword.*

Grasp the handle of the sword with the right hand, end phalanx of the forefinger touching the front of the inside of the steel shell, thumb on the back of the handle, which should be pressed by the fingers against the heel of the hand.

N.B.—In using the sword the wrist is only to be bent laterally, and never flexed.

*"First Position."*

Heels together, feet at right angles to one another, right foot pointing straight to the front with the left heel immediately behind the right. Body erect with the right side, head and eyes turned in the direction of the adversary. Sword and arm in one straight line, edge of the sword to the right front, and the point about 8 inches from the ground.

*"Sword in Line."*

From the "First Position," keeping the sword and arm in one straight line, raise the sword with the arm fully extended to the level of the shoulder, the edge to the right and incline slightly upwards.

From the position of "Sword in Line" advance the right foot in the direction of the adversary about  $2\frac{1}{2}$ -ft. lengths, well bending the knees in doing so. In this position, the right leg below the knee should be perpendicular, and the left knee bent perpendicularly over the instep; body erect, its weight evenly balanced between each leg, head and eyes looking towards the adversary; forearm and blade in one line, pointing in the direction of the adversary, edge of the blade to the right and arm slightly bent at the elbow, which should be free from the body; left shoulder well back and left arm akimbo, wrist bent downwards. There should be nothing stiff about this position and the direction of the weapon should vary according to the position of the adversary.

From the position of "Engage," and keeping the left foot flat on the ground, straighten the right arm and force the body forward to the fullest extent, at the same time straightening the left leg with the utmost rapidity; the right foot, raised not more than 1 inch, must be advanced at least 1 foot's length in the direction of the adversary, and placed sharply and firmly on the ground. The weight of the body thus inclined forward, must rest principally on the right leg, the left hip being neither raised nor depressed.

The pupil should come to rest from any position the easiest way.

"Engage."

"Lunge  
or Point."

"Rest."

The parries are here described as if they were made from the "engage" position for the sake of convenience of description; they should, however, be executed from any position; *e.g.*, any one parry should be executed from the final position of any other parry, or from the lunge, &c. It should also be noted that a parry is a movement of defence and not a fixed position, and that it is made with the object of taking off the adversary's attacking blade with the edge of the sword. The edge of the sword is used on account of the extra strength obtained. In making a parry the adversary's blade should be met with the "forte," and not with the "feble" of one's own blade. If the parries are correctly made as above described, the adversary's blade should not only be met with the edge and forte of the blade, but should finally be brought to rest by contact with the hilt. It should also be noted that the height at which the parries are made should vary according to the height of the adversary's attack; in this way it will be seen that most of the parries practically merge into one another, and that as long as the body is protected, it does not so much matter which parry is used, or whether it is made higher or lower than as described. It is always advisable to parry an attacking blade as far in front of the body as possible; and this is best effected by giving a slight forward movement to the parry.

All parries are equally effective against a point or cut.

"*Right Parry.*"

{ Straighten the right arm so as to meet the attack, directing the point as far as possible towards the adversary, high or low as required, edge of the blade to the right, and turned slightly upwards.

“*Left  
Parry.*”

Carry the sword across the body to the left to meet the adversary's attack, arm slightly bent, the blade high or low as required, edge to the left, without allowing the point to go too far from the central line.

“*Head  
Parry.*”

Carry the sword upwards, straightening the arm, the hand in line with the head, the point about 6 inches higher than the hand and directed over the head of the adversary, the edge turned upward, eyes looking under the forte of the blade.

“*Dis-  
engage.*”

When two adversaries are engaged with their blades in contact in one line, and one of them carries his blade into another line, he is said to “disengage.” The blades cannot be in contact in one line and the line closed (*i.e.*, the body protected on that side) without an opening being left for attack in another line. An attack can therefore be made at such opening by a “Point with disengage” made as follows:—

By a quick and close movement of the whole arm detach the blade from the adversary's, carry it with a spiral motion, passing close to his hilt and arm (over or under his blade according to the position of his sword) and deliver the point at the opening aimed at. The whole movement to be executed with great rapidity combined with steadiness.



When an opponent keeps the point of his sword persistently directed towards your own body, it is impossible for you to attack him without running on his point, unless you first remove his blade from its threatening position. His blade may be removed by a "deviation" executed as follows:—

"*Deviation.*"

Forming any one of the parries described above with a slight forward movement, press smoothly but quickly with the "forte" of your own blade against the "feeble" of the adversary's until it is sufficiently removed, taking at the end of the motion the final position of the particular parry used—then immediately execute an attack with a direct point or a point with disengage, as required.

"*Feints.*"

A "feint" is a false or pretended attack made by a movement of the sword and body with the intention of causing the adversary to believe that a determined attack is about to be delivered, while in reality it is not so. The object of making a feint is to compel the adversary to form a parry to protect the line threatened, and so uncover some other part of his body, thereby making an opening for the real attack. The feint should be made by inclining the body slightly but energetically forward and straightening the arm (if it be not already straight) so as to simulate an attack with a direct point. If the feint is made really

well, the adversary will at once form a parry, and it is while he is forming this parry that a disengage and point should be made at the part of his body that he uncovers in trying to parry the feint. In attacking with a feint it is very important not to dwell on the feint, but (anticipating the parry that the adversary will form) to disengage immediately, so that you may hit him while he is making the parry. A feint, to be of any use, must be made with such decision that it conveys to the adversary's mind a firm conviction that it is a real attack, and so compels him to form the necessary parry to meet it. A feint can be made with a cut in a similar manner, but the subsequent attack should always be with the point.

"Feints"—  
continued.

"Direct  
Cut" (at head  
or at either  
cheek).

Bend the arm a little, turning the edge in the required direction (downwards for the head, to the right for the right cheek, to the left for the left cheek), and extend it immediately, delivering a blow sharply at the head or cheek as the case may be.

"Circling  
Cut" (at  
right or  
left cheek).

This is delivered in one movement at the adversary's right or left cheek as the case may be, edge leading. It is executed as far as the movement of the sword and arm are concerned in the same way as the "Exercising Cuts," No. 2 and No. 3 respectively, but the circle described should be smaller.

"Cut Over."

Keeping the forearm and sword in one line bend the arm and raise the sword, so as to clear the adversary's blade by sliding the sword up it, and deliver the cut sharply downwards edge leading, as soon as the point of the adversary's sword is cleared. This cut is used when both blades are in contact, and is especially useful when the adversary exerts a slight pressure against the blade.

(ii.) Dismounted Fighting.

The following lessons are progressive, and will be taught in the order in which they are given below, repeating whenever necessary; a reasonable degree of proficiency will be attained at each step before proceeding with the next.

Lesson i.

*Lunging with  
the Point.*

"First position."  
"Sword in line."  
"Engage."  
"Lunge" (*i.e.*, with direct point).  
"Rest."

The above will at first be taught without a sword, and afterwards with sword in hand, the men being taught how to hold the sword while resting between the various movements.

Lesson ii.

*Parries.* { "Right parry."  
"Left parry."  
"Head parry."

In teaching the parries the instructor will at first illustrate them with the aid of an assistant who knows them. He will then take each pupil separately and, holding his own sword in

the required position, will show him a threatening attack and make him parry it, indicating the part to be defended rather than the name of the parry. By this means the pupil will be made to realize from the beginning exactly what he has to parry, and the necessity for it.

### Lesson iii.

Lunge with point at "Wall Pad."

This is a useful and important lesson adopted in order to teach men to aim at and hit something with the point, to judge their distance properly, and to increase their reach, speed, and energy.

### Lesson iv.

*Direct Attack.* { *Instructor* shows opening.  
*Pupil* lunges with point and hits instructor.  
 Repeat this from different openings till pupil attacks well with the point.

### Lesson v.

*Parry and Return.* { *Instructor* threatens pupil with point or cut.  
*Pupil* parries instructor's attack and "returns" with the point, hitting instructor.  
 Repeat in different lines.

### Lesson vi.

*Combination of iv. and v.* { *Instructor* shows opening.  
*Pupil* attacks with point;  
*Instructor* parries and returns at pupil;  
*Pupil* parries and returns with the point, hitting instructor.  
 Repeat in different lines.

## Lesson vii.

*Assaulting  
Lesson  
(direct).*

Two pupils, on guard, facing each other at lunging distance.  
 "One" attacks direct with point and tries to hit his opponent.  
 "Other" endeavours to parry the attack, and, if he succeeds, to return with the point immediately.

In these assaulting lessons the attacker chooses his own time to make the attack, and must make it with great speed and determination. No words of command will be given.

All subsequent instruction will finish with a few minutes of this assaulting lesson, until Lesson xi. is reached, when either may be used to conclude the day's instruction.

## Lesson viii.

"Disengage." { Teach (iv.), (v.), (vi.), and (vii.), commencing with a "Disengage."

## Lesson ix.

"Deviation." { Teach (iv.), (v.), (vi.), and (vii.), commencing with a "Deviation."

## Lesson x.

"Feints."

{ Teach (iv.), (v.), (vi.), and (vii.), commencing with one feint.  
 Instructor shows opening.  
 Pupil feints with the point at the opening and (as instructor parries) disengages and hits with the point.

## Lesson xi.

*Assaulting Lesson* (direct or with "feint.") { Two pupils, on guard, as in Lesson vii.  
 "One" attacks either direct or with "feint" trying to hit with the point.  
 "Other" parries and returns with the point (i.e., acts according to which of the two ways he is attacked) trying his best to hit with the point in his return if he is able to parry successfully.

This is a most important lesson, as it gives scope for developing the true fighting instinct in teaching the men to make either a good direct attack, or a good feint, which will really deceive the adversary (*see also* note to Lesson vii.).

## Lesson xii.

*The Assault.* { The assault on foot, first of all with the instructor and afterwards with other pupils under the supervision of the instructor.

Backward pupils will be given additional lessons of the above as required, either at once or later on. Teaching of the 2nd stage should not, however, be delayed when pupils arrive at this point, even though they may not be thoroughly proficient.

*2nd Stage.*

The pupil will be placed on the low dummy horse or in the mounted position on foot.

It will be noticed that there are some differences in the positions and movements recommended for use mounted and those used in dismounted fighting. The difference is, however, very slight, and is to a certain extent inevitable, owing to the different points of view of a man fighting on foot and on a horse.

The principles are nevertheless the same. The great object of all these lessons, mounted and dismounted, is to give the man control of his sword, which will enable him to adopt methods suitable to the occasion, and thus render a good account of himself in an actual fight.

“*Engage.*”

Forearm and blade in one line, pointing in the direction of the adversary, edge of the blade to the right and arm slightly bent at the elbow which should be free from the body. There should be nothing stiff about this position, and the direction of the weapon should vary according to the position of the adversary.

When charging, the arm should be straight back of the hand up, edge of the blade to the right and turned slightly upwards, body bent well forward, the direction of the point being controlled from the shoulder without bending the elbow or wrist.

The instructor will place himself in the position of the opponent, and then move round the pupil, making him follow him with his sword, as though he were engaged with an enemy.

“*Point.*”

The point will be delivered with the utmost promptitude, horizontal or low, as cavalry or infantry, in any required direction as follows:—

Keeping the sword and forearm in line with one another, direct the point of the sword at the object, and straighten the arm vigorously, at the same time bending the body forward to gain extra reach.

Without in any way checking the speed with which the point is delivered, the instructor must be careful to insure that it is made with steadiness and accuracy, so as to prevent any vibration of the sword.

"*Right Parry.*" } As before described.

"*Left Parry.*" } Ditto.

"*Head Parry.*" } Ditto.

The best way, when mounted, of dealing with an adversary on the left rear is to manœuvre by means of good horsemanship for some better position, therefore no parry against any such attack is necessary.

In all the instruction in this stage the instructor will move round the pupil as required, the pupil following him bound with his sword at the "Engage," as described above. The instructor will then (from any direction) show an opening for the pupil to attack, or he will threaten the pupil to make him parry correctly as the case may be. All the hits and parries will thus be made with reference to the instructor's movements whenever possible, but with an advanced pupil it is useful, with a view to quickening his movements, to place two, three, or even four men round him to attack him in turn, or for him to attack them in a similar manner.

It is good practice if dummies, balls, &c., be held or placed in various positions, and the pupil made to point at them quickly.



*3rd Stage.*

(Position as in 1st Stage.)

Teach pupil to hit instructor with :—

“ *Direct Cut.*”      At head and at either cheek.“ *Circling  
Cut.*”      }      At right and left cheek.“ *Cut Over.*”

It will be pointed out that on account of the clothing, bandoliers, &c., it is useless to attempt to *cut* at a man's body and that the only places where a cut is likely to do any damage are the cheeks and neck.

*4th Stage.*

In this stage the lessons in the 2nd Stage will be practised mounted, and at the same time the pupil will be taught the principles of making use of his horse for gaining the position he wishes with regard to the adversary, and for obtaining additional power at the moment of delivering the blow. In order to make such use of the horse as will enable the rider to deal more effectually with an opponent in mounted combat, the horse should be trained to collect itself on its hocks and hind quarters and then to spring forward from its hocks at the right moment. The actual points and parries will be made at the instructor as explained, and the practice at dummies executed in the same way, only with the horse at speed. It should be explained to the pupil that when mounted, his horse and the movement of the body take the place of the lunge on foot.

*Mounted Assaulting Lessons* are carried out at first with the instructor and afterwards with other pupils on the principles indicated in the 1st Stage. The attacker will be taught to make his attacks with his horse on the move at a reasonable

speed, and, whether he hits or is parried, to keep his horse moving and thus avoid his opponent's return, and so manœuvre for another attack. The pupil will then try an actual assault with the instructor, who must regulate his play according to the capacity of the pupil, taking care to give him opportunities and not to discourage him by hitting him too frequently.

#### S. 365. Mounted Combat with other Pupils.

~~Mounted combats will always be carried out under the supervision of the instructor, who should watch the play carefully and endeavour to correct faults and encourage a dashing style of attack. The men will be instructed to practise fighting on the move as much as possible, and not from a stationary position.~~

#### S. 366. *Principles of Mounted Combat.*

The first object (except at practice) in attacking an enemy is to charge straight at him, and to throw him down; the second is to drive the point into him in doing so.

If an attack be delivered with the point well to the fore, he is bound to try and ward it off before he can do anything else. Should he avoid you, and leave you space for choosing the point of attack, you should endeavour to take advantage of it; at all events avoid the attack being made on your left rear, when a change of position can alone bring you upon an equality with your opponent; this may be done either by making a sudden halt, so as to allow him to pass, and then pressing upon his left rear; or by turning quickly to the left about, and thereby having your right also opposed to his. Should you be prevented doing this, and he still keeps on your left, you must get as close as possible to him, for in his situation, by keeping at a proper distance from you, his attack will reach when yours will not, and you will be reduced to the defence alone.

In meeting your opponent on the left front, swing your horse sharply to the left, which will immediately bring you with your sword-arm free, at liberty to act upon his left. In meeting him upon the right front, press your horse quickly on, and by a sharp turn to the right, gain his left rear. If pursued, endeavour to keep your adversary on the right rear. When attacked by more than one, you will naturally endeavour to keep them both either to the right or left; but where they have been enabled to place themselves on both sides, press close upon the left opponent, and endeavour to keep the right one at a distance.

The attack or defence against the lance must depend greatly upon the rider; for if the lancer is equally well-mounted, and skilful in the management of his horse, he will endeavour to keep at such distance as to be out of your reach, whilst he can easily make good his thrust, from the length of his lance; and he will very frequently succeed in directing his point at your horse, which, becoming unruly, will leave you exposed to the attack of your opponent. You must, therefore, invariably endeavour to gain his right rear, where he is less able to attack or defend; whereas if the attack is made upon his left rear, he has the advantage of resting his lance upon his bridle arm, and can lengthen or shorten his thrust with facility and quickness. If engaged on his left, the object must be to keep just out of distance of his lance; watching the opportunity to close either by having previously formed a defence, or by bearing the lance out of the line.

#### S. 367. *Competitions for Skill-at-Arms.*

Two combatants should be sent at each other from a long distance apart, on varied ground, accompanied by umpires.

After engaging, half a minute will be allowed them to fight, at the end of which the umpires will decide which man had the better of the encounter.

If neither makes a decisive point, both lose the heat.

In troop competitions, the aim will be to find the *worst* swordsman in the troop. Second heats are therefore arranged for the *losers* of the first heats; in this way the worst man gets the most practice.

Instructors should bear in mind the importance of the horse in the mounted combat, and should not award marks entirely to the sword.

- i. A preliminary examination in "Skill-at-arms" will be held by *troops* with a fixed standard of marks, which, if not attained, disqualify the man to compete further.
- ii. As the result of (i.) the eight best men in each troop (as determined by the number of marks obtained) will each in turn compete against one another, and the two best of eight compete for the best and second best swordsmen of the squadron.

## EXERCISES FOR STRENGTHENING THE ARM, ETC.

The following exercises will be practised from time to time, and are designed for making the body supple and strong, and also for strengthening the arm and giving control over the sword. These movements are also of value as general physical exercises.

### S. 368. *Body Exercises.*

#### (i.) Trunk Bending Forward.

Starting position—"Hips firm," *i.e.*, hands on hips.

<p>"Trunk Forward- Bend."</p>	{	<p>Bend the trunk slowly forward from the hips, keeping the back straight, the chest advanced, and the head at the same relative position as at "Attention."</p>
---------------------------------------	---	--

"Upward-Stretch." } Slowly resume the starting position.

(ii.) Trunk Bending Backward.

Starting position—"Hips firm."

"Trunk Backward-Bend."

{ Keeping the knees straight, bend the upper part of the trunk slowly backwards, the head commencing the movement and kept well back with the chin drawn in. The bend should *not* be made from the waist alone, but the whole spine should be arched.

"Upward-Stretch."

{ By reversing the movement, raise the trunk to the starting position.

(iii.) Trunk Bending Sideways.

Starting position—"Hips firm."

"Trunk to the Left (Right)-Bend."

{ Without altering the relative position of the head, shoulders, or arms, bend the trunk steadily as far as possible to the left (right).

"Upward-Stretch."

{ Raise the trunk slowly to the upright position.

### S. 369. *Exercising Cuts.*

The "Exercising Cuts" are performed purely as an exercise, and are invaluable as a means of developing the power and elasticity of the sword arm, giving control of the sword and suppleness to the body, and also insuring cutting with an absolutely true edge. They should be executed from the position of "Sword in line," or from the "engage" position with the right foot advanced a few more inches than usual. They should at first be performed by numbers for a few times, then in one large, rapid, easy, swinging movement, and

afterwards the size of the circles should be reduced little by little until they finally approach the practical form of cut required.

When executed from the "Sword in line" position, the movements of the arm and sword are as described below, but the body is kept upright and the legs straight.

(i.) Exercising Cut No. 1.

"One."

By a movement of the forearm, and without bending the wrist, turn the back of the hand to the left, edge of the sword upwards. Bend the arm sharply, draw the body well back by straightening the right leg and bending the left, drop the point of the sword and swing it to the rear, making it pass close to the body with an easy pendulum-like movement. The blade must pass to a diagonal position, edge to the rear, point the height of the flank and directed downwards to the rear, hand as high as the left temple and about 4 inches from it, elbow well raised, eyes looking underneath the arm. In this motion the forearm must never cross the line of vision, but must always be above it.

"Two."

Using the elbow as a pivot and without allowing it to drop, bring the arm and sword upward and forward with force and freedom, edge of the blade leading, the point of the sword describing the arc of a large circle; instantaneously on the completion of the cut, straighten the left leg, thrust the body well forward and bend the right knee.

## (ii.) Exercising Cut No. 2.

"One."

Without bending the wrist or lowering the elbow, bend the right arm at the elbow, raise the forearm and sword vertically and describe a circular movement with the point of the sword (keeping the elbow as a pivot) upwards, backwards, and then downwards to the left as far as the shoulder, the forearm and sword being in one line, edge to the left, at the same time bending the left knee and the body well back as previously described.

"Two."

Straighten the arm at the elbow and deliver the cut, edge leading, with a horizontal sweep to the left, the body and legs assisting the completion of the cut as above.

## (iii.) Exercising Cut No. 3.

"One."

Bend the right arm at the elbow, and without bending the wrist or lowering the elbow raise the forearm and sword vertically, and describe a circular movement with the point of the sword (keeping the elbow as a pivot) upwards, backwards, and then downwards to a horizontal position to the right of the head, the forearm and sword being in one line, edge to the right, at the same time bending the left knee and body well back as previously described.

"Two."

Straighten the arm at the elbow and deliver the cut, edge leading, with a horizontal sweep to the right, the body and legs assisting as before.

## APPENDIX II.

## INSTRUCTIONS IN THE USE OF THE LANCE.

For practice in connexion with tournaments, skill at arms competitions, &c., and not to be practised as a drill exercise.)

S. 370. *Preparation for Lance Practice.*

(Dismounted.)

The squad will fall in, in single rank—standing at ease—butt of the lance on the ground—holding the pole in the right hand in any convenient position.

*Attention.* } Come to attention holding the lance between the thumb and fingers of the right hand at the full extent of the arm, thumb inside the pole, fingers outside, back of the hand to the right, butt close to the ball of the right foot. (This is the position of the "Order.")

*"Form for Lance Practice."* } Bring the lance to the shoulder by raising the arm from the elbow still holding the lance as at the *Order*, right elbow close to the hip, hand in front and in line with elbow, lance sloping backwards and resting on the right shoulder. (This is the position in which the lance is carried when marching on foot.)

*"Quick March."* } The men file from the right of sections. The centre man of the line marches straight forward, the other right hand men of sections move to the front and extend until each man has an interval of four paces from the man on his flank nearest to the centre of the line; the remainder of each section follow in succession at a distance of four paces; dressing by the centre.



“*Halt.*”—The lance is lowered to the *Order*.

“*Carry Lance.*” { Raise the hand with the back to the front and grasp the pole, thumb inside the sling and level with the top of the shoulder, back of the hand to the front, elbow down.

“*Engage.*” { Let the hand slide smartly down the pole to the full extent of the sling, thumb inside it, lance upright; raise the butt 6 inches from the ground and lower the point direct to the front till the lance is horizontal, catching the pole under the closed arm; as the lance is being lowered carry the right foot out to the right 20 inches, feet pointing straight to the front, bridle hand in the mounted position.

In executing the lance practice, dismounted, when acting on the right side (which should be drawn in) the weight of the body should be chiefly on the left leg, the knees bent and pressed well apart, the reverse position will be adopted when acting on the left side.

“*Right Prove Interval.*” { Carry the lance under the arm round to the right and slowly extend the arm, back of the hand to the front, arm, point, and butt in line with shoulder, pole outside the arm.

“*Engage.*”—As above.

“*Front Prove Distance.*” { Extend the arm to the front, and as described in *Right Prove Interval*, body inclined a little forward.

“*Engage.*”—As above.

“*Carry Lance.*” { Come to the position of *Attention* and carry lance as described above.

S. 371. *Lance Practice.*

(Dismounted.)

Lances being at the carry—

“*Engage.*”—As before.

“*Point.*” { Deliver the point with force to the full extent of the arm direct to the front in line with the shoulder, back of the hand to the left, pole outside the arm.

“*Engage.*”—As before.

“*Right front wave and point.*” { Carry the lance round to the right front, and, keeping the pole under the arm as at the *Engage*, wave the point first to the right and then to the left through an arc of about 20 degrees; then without pause deliver the point to the right front to the full extent of the right arm.

“*Engage.*”—As before.

“*Parry.*” { Bring the lance perpendicular to the right side, hand on a line with and about 6 inches from the right shoulder, which will be thrown back, elbow raised to the height of the hand; then deliver a strong parry to the front to the full extent of the arm, keeping the lance perpendicular.

“*Right rear point.*” { Lower the point to the right rear (raising the butt so as to clear the horse's head when mounted), draw the right hand into the left, back of the hand down, pole resting on the bridle hand, upper part of the body turned to the right rear. Then deliver the point with force, to the full extent of the arm to the right rear, back of the hand down; point butt and arm in line with the shoulder, leaning the body well over, and throwing back the right shoulder. Having delivered the point, withdraw the lance to the position as before delivering the point.

“ *Left rear point.*”

Raise the lance horizontally over the head by straightening the arm circling the point smartly to the left rear, and lower the lance till it rests horizontally on the bridle hand, the right hand drawn back about 18 inches from the left elbow well raised, at the same time change the weight of the body from the left to the right leg, the body well turned on the hips to the left.

Then deliver the point with force to the left rear catching the butt firmly under the arm.

Having delivered the point, at once withdraw the lance to the *Engage*, but with the point directed to the left front.

“ *Left front wave and point.*”

Make the wave short and quick to the left and right as before directed, and at once deliver the point with force, catching the butt firmly under the arm.

“ *Engage.*”—As before.

“ *Carry Lance.*”—As before.

“ *Reform Ranks.*”

The men make a half turn inwards toward the centre, and on the command *Quick March* the man who is centre of the line moves up four paces and halts, the rights of fours move up with him, correcting their interval, and the remainder reform on them.

The lance practice should be carried out against infantry in doing so the points, waves, and parries will be directed downwards.

The sequence of the practice should be varied by word of command, so as to accustom the men to rapidly deliver an attack in any direction.

S. 372. *Practical Instruction in the Use of the Lance.*

(Mounted.)

1. To use the lance to the best advantage against an opponent in the charge, the *mélée*, or in the pursuit, demands horsemanship, complete control of the weapon, skill and determination. The pace of the horse is also an important factor.

The Lancer should avoid engaging an adversary at a slow pace, which invariably results in both opponents circling round each other.—The moral effect of the lance will thus be lost, and the greater reach of the lance over the sword will be of less advantage.

The aim of the Lancer should be to strike his opponent with the point and at speed. Against a horseman armed with a sword he will have the advantage of reach; against a dismounted man the advantage of both momentum and reach; and against a mounted Lancer he will not be at a disadvantage.

If he fails to get his point home when moving at speed, the pace will carry him for the moment out of reach of a counter attack. He can then either select another opponent or renew the attack on the original one. Apart from horsemanship, determination and skill in handling his weapon, his success must therefore be looked for in the suddenness of attack and pace, and in not permitting an adversary to force him into single combat.

For instructional purposes, fighting lance *versus* lance, or lance *versus* sword should, therefore, but rarely be ordered, and then only for giving the Lancer the necessary degree of practice in fighting at close quarters in situations into which he may unavoidably fall.

For the latter purpose the "thrust" may be practised to the right and left fronts as follows:—

"Right front thrust." { Raise the hand above the head and circle the point round by the left to the rear, arm extended to the rear; then deliver the thrust to the full extent of the arm and withdraw to the *Engage*.

"Left front thrust." { Circle the point round by the rear, bringing the butt direct to the left front; then deliver the thrust to the full extent of the arm and withdraw to the *Engage*.

2. The aim of the practical instruction must be to teach the man—

- (a) To drive the point of the lance home with determination through an object which will offer sufficient resistance to resemble the human body.
- (b) To retain a firm grip of his lance.
- (c) To withdraw the lance with ease from the object into which it has been driven.
- (d) To return the lance rapidly to a position of readiness so as to be again prepared to deliver a fresh attack on either side.
- (e) To ward off an attack with a parry or wave.
- (f) To rapidly change his direction so as to deliver a fresh attack to either flank or to the rear.
- (g) To carry out the above exercises at the gallop.

3. Instruction on the following general lines will be found useful:—

Dummies representing men, both mounted and dismounted, should be set up in the open. These should not be arranged in any set sequence, but should be frequently moved, so as to insure as much variety as possible from day to day.

In the early exercises, one dummy for each man will suffice; at subsequent lessons two should be used, which should be in the same line, and on the same hand.

After which dummies may be set up on the same line of advance, but one on either hand. They should then be set up in conjunction with jumps, which may be placed either before or behind them.

As individual skill develops, the dummies should be closer together, and in positions demanding rapid change of direction, but they should never be so close as to render it impossible for the man to deliver his attack with effect before having to turn his attention to another one.

Men should be taught to deliver their points at the centre of the dummy, which should therefore be marked for the purpose.

Practical instruction in pointing cannot be given unless the lances are sharp, and special care will be given to this.

The dummies should be arranged at heights to correspond to those of men both mounted and on foot.

Men should be taught to use the wave with effect by assigning one or more of the dummies or posts to be knocked over by this form of attack. Its use to disconcert an opponent either by striking his horse over the head or by using it against him when unavoidably brought to close quarters and at slow pace will be explained, as also its usefulness in parrying a point and of sweeping the lance from an opponent's hand.

The best form of dummies for teaching the point are those made of wet clay, but when this form cannot be provided sacks filled with chopped hay or straw make fairly good substitutes. They should vary in size from that of a man's body to a head only.

Any suitable contrivance which will give a sufficient degree of resistance will suffice for practising the wave and the parry.

Tent-pegging should also form part of the instruction, but in this, as in the other practical instruction, a large number of runs must not be demanded from any horse in one day; three will usually suffice.

A sufficiency of instruction must therefore be obtained by practice during the intervals when other individual instruction is being given.

In order to prevent horses becoming excited and out of hand, they will all be walked quietly down the track at the end of the practice. If a horse shows any signs of becoming unsteady, he must only be walked down the runs for a few days.

---

### APPENDIX III.

---

#### S. 373. FIRST AID TO MAN.

Always notify the Medical Officers at once, if possible.

*Wound with Bleeding.*—Make a pad of a clean handkerchief or other material, as follows:—Fold in the corners towards the centre and continue this until the requisite sized pad is formed; apply to wound, and keep in position with handkerchief, bandage, puttee, &c. If the bleeding is severe and continues, put a small stick through the bandage and twist up. With another handkerchief the stick can be prevented from untwisting.

*Wound without Bleeding.*—Apply a clean rag to wound and keep it in position by means of a handkerchief.

*Broken Bones.*—If a limb bone be broken, some rigid body, such as a piece of wood, a bundle of twigs or rushes, a folded gaiter, &c., may be applied as a splint to the part to give rest to the broken bone. The splint must be long enough to extend beyond the extremities of the broken bone. If the bone has come through the skin, place a piece of clean rag over the wound and then apply the splint.

It is better to apply the splint over the clothing.

*Broken Jaw.*—Tie the jaws together by means of a handkerchief or puttee round the head and chin.

*Broken Collar-bone.*—Rest the fore-arm in a sling, with the hand pointing towards the opposite shoulder, then bandage the fore-arm and arm to the side by means of a puttee, &c.

*Broken Thigh.*—A long splint to reach from the ankle to the arm-pit should be used. A rifle makes a fair splint. See that it is unloaded, likewise the magazine. Place the rifle flat to the outside of the broken thigh, butt up, and the muzzle towards the ankle. Fix the end of the barrel to the foot and ankle, bandage the butt to the side, and then bandage the rifle to the thigh, to the knee, and to the middle of the leg; when finished, tie the two limbs firmly together.

*Shoulder Out.*—Put the arm in a sling. Do not attempt anything further.

*Sprained Joint or Muscles.*—Use horse oils, well rubbed in.

*Suspended Animation.*—Make use of artificial respiration as follows:—The patient is placed face downwards on the ground, the patient's arm is bent and placed under his forehead, thus keeping the nose and mouth clear from the ground. The



operator kneels astride or at one side of the patient near the hips, and places his open hands flat over the small ribs with the thumbs touching over the spine. He puts his weight on to his hands, squeezing down the ribs, expelling the air. He then releases the pressure by slowly sitting back on his heels, causing air to be sucked in. These movements are repeated slowly about fifteen times a minute. Apply friction by rubbing the limbs upward towards the body. Promote warmth of the body as soon as possible by applying covered hot-water bottles, between the thighs and to the armpits. If the power of swallowing has returned, small quantities of hot coffee, hot tea, brandy, or wine should be administered.

*Snake-bite.*—(1) Tie something tightly round the limb, on the heart side and about a hand's breadth from the bite. The bite is generally denoted by two little punctures. (2) Pick up the skin where the bites are and cut it off. (3) Suck the wound. (4) Give the patient stimulants if collapsed. (5) Prevent his going to sleep, by walking him up and down and smacking his back.

*For Stings of Insects,* apply ammonia or blue-bag, or washing soda.

*Burns or Scalds.*—Cover injured part with a piece of rag soaked in oil or vaseline. If clothing adheres, cut it away.

*Insensibility.*—1. In all cases loosen all clothing about neck and chest, and give as much fresh air as possible.

2. Lay patient on his back.

3. If face is flushed, raise the head, if pale, lower it.

4. *Never* give anything by the mouth.

5. Apply cold to the head and warmth to his feet.

In fits with convulsions do as above and control the limbs and head so that the patient will not hurt himself, and place handkerchief knot between his teeth so that he will not bite his tongue.

*Sunstroke or Heat-stroke.*—Remove to a cool shady spot, remove all tight clothing, and dash cold water over the head and back.

*Frost-bite.*—Keep away from fire, and rub parts with snow, or spirits and water.

Where a person has taken poisoned food, encourage vomiting by giving mustard and salt and warm water in repeated doses.

*Sore Feet.*—Bathe the feet at night in tepid water, with salt alum in it.

*Blisters.*—Prick the edge with a needle that has been made red-hot with a match, keep clean and prevent surface from being rubbed.

---

## APPENDIX IV.

### S. 374. FIRST AID TO HORSE.

The following Notes are for the instruction of mounted soldiers, to enable them to render first aid ; but it is expressly laid down that when in camp, or on the march, all cases must be reported to the nearest veterinary officer as soon as possible.

*Colic (Spasmodic).*—Pain is not continuous, animal violent at intervals, looks round at sides, sweats, hurried breathing, lining eye a bright red, mouth dry. If there is constipation, give 1 ounce of carbonate of ammonia ball ; or 6 ounces of whisky in

water; copious injections of cold water, and apply mustard or hot water packs to belly. Later give an aloes ball. Should there be diarrhœa, give 1 to 2 ounces of each laudanum and sweet spirits of nitre.

*Colic (Flatulent or Windy).*—Pain is continuous; belly inflated from gases generated from fermentation of food. Give 1 ounce of carbonate of ammonia ball and 4 ounces of bicarbonate of soda.

*Exhaustion.*—From fatigue after heavy and fast work. Animal lies down, no inclination to feed, but generally very thirsty; cold sweats appear. Rub body briskly, then clothe warm; give 1 ounce carbonate of ammonia ball or 6 to 8 ounces whisky in water.

*Coughs and Colds.*—Pay general attention to comfort, steady the head, using bucket with straw at bottom, paint the throat with tincture of iodine or rub with liniment, damp dry food, but give green fodder for preference, change drinking water often; give chlorate of potash 1 dram. and Epsom salts 2 drams morning and night, in either food or water.

*Strangles.*—Always isolate horse as soon as symptoms appear, general treatment as in colds, abscess to be opened when it "points," and well drained, destroy discharges, and treat as an ordinary wound.

*Wounds.*—Clean thoroughly with warm water, using a disinfectant in a weak solution, dress with powdered boracic acid, and, where practicable, bandage, otherwise cover with cotton wool, afterwards avoid using water as much as possible.

*Broken Knees.*—At once wash well with warm water and disinfectant, so as to thoroughly cleanse the wound, afterwards use cold water, by means of hose, if available, and dress with boracic acid.

*Bleeding from Wounds.*—Where practicable apply pressure, by placing pad over wound and bandaging tightly, otherwise put large pin through both lips of wound, and tie horsehair round in figure 8.

*Sore Backs.*—Every sore, every injury, every abrasion on a horse's back is due to a certain definite cause, which, if removed, produces no further effect. Sore backs are generally brought about either by friction or pressure, or a combination of the two. Therefore, find out cause and remove it. Wash the sore with warm disinfectant once; and afterwards use cold water. Apply a lotion consisting of sulphate of zinc and acetate of lead—2 drams. of each to a pint of water three or four times daily.

*Punctures in Feet.*—Pare horn around wound, and place foot in bucket of hot water, then thoroughly disinfect by syringing (with carbolic acid for preference), and cover with tar.

“*Don'ts.*”—*Don't* give feed to a horse hot from work, without allowing him a small drink of cold water.

When drenching, *don't* pinch the throat, to make horse swallow the liquid.

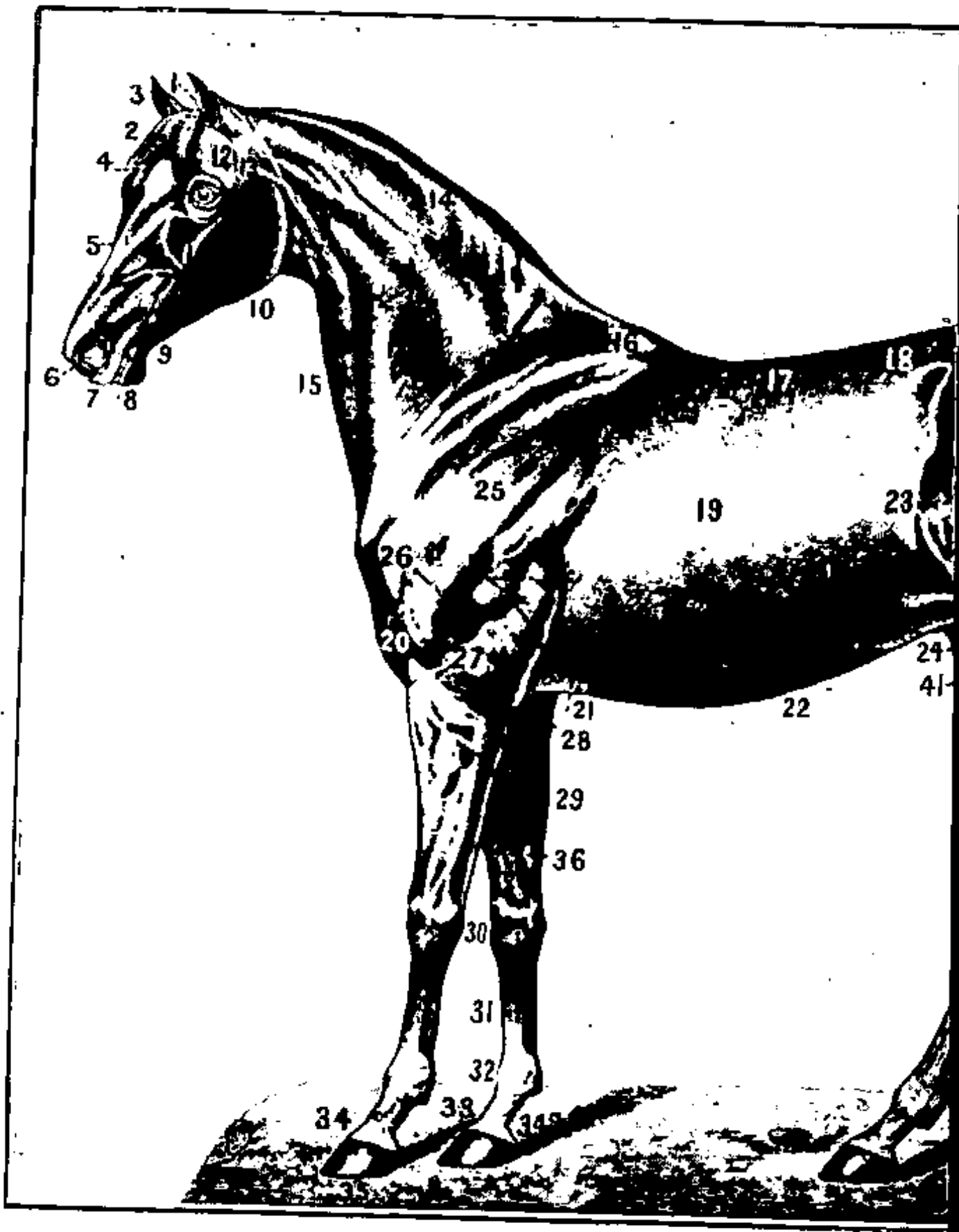
*Don't* pour liquid down the nostrils.

*Don't* drench if throat very sore, but give medicine as a ball.

*Don't* burn the “Lampas” from a horse's mouth, as it is unnecessary, and very cruel.

*Don't* use hot water *continuously* on broken knees.

*Don't*, when bandaging, draw one portion of the bandage tighter than another, nor tie the strings tighter than the bandage put on.



3

2

4

5

10

6

9

7

8

15

16

25

19

18

23

26

20

27

24

41

21

22

28

29

36

30

31

32

34

38

34a

## PLATE I.—DIVISIONS OF THE HORSE'S BODY.

### THE HEAD.

1. Nape of the neck or Poll.
2. Forelock.
3. Ears.
4. Forehead.
5. Face.
6. Nostril.
7. Upper lip.
8. Under lip.
9. Place for the curb-chain.
10. Lower jaw.
11. Zygomatic ridge.
12. Hollow above the eye.
13. Maxillary joint.

### THE NECK.

14. Mane or crest.
15. Lower part of neck or throat.

### THE TRUNK.

16. Withers.
17. Back.
18. Loins.
19. Side of chest.
20. Breast.
21. Floor of chest.
22. Abdomen.
23. Flanks.
24. Sheath or prepuce.

### THE FORE LIMBS.

25. Shoulder.
26. Point of shoulder.
27. Arm.
28. Elbow.

29. Fore-arm.
30. Knee.
31. Shank or canon-bone.
32. Fetlock-joint.
33. Pastern.
34. Coronet, and heels, 34a.
35. Hoof.
36. Chestnut.

### THE CROUP AND HIND LIMBS.

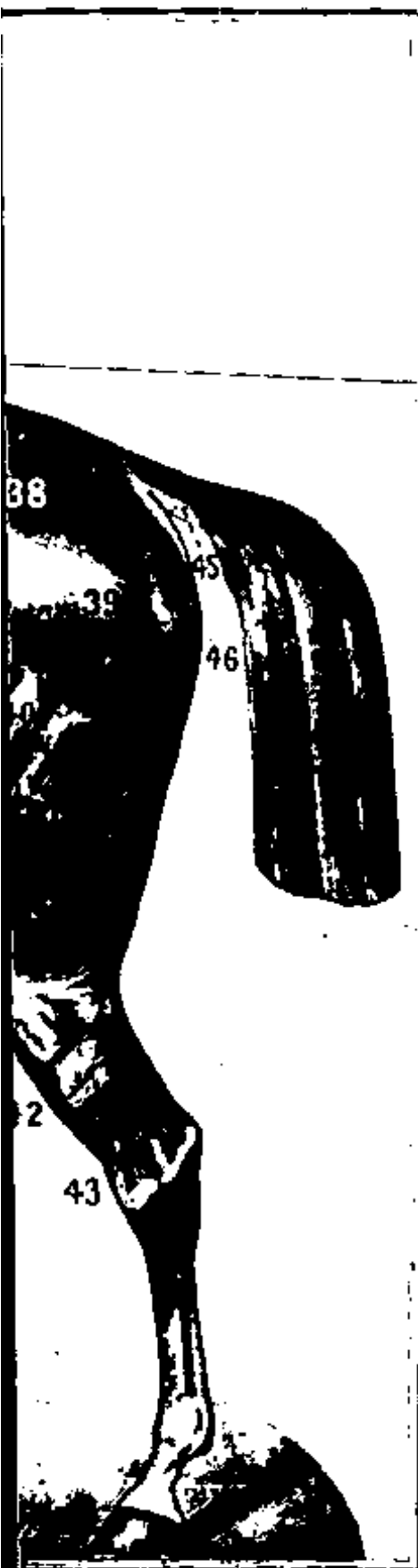
37. Haunch.
38. Croup.
39. Hip-joint.
40. Upper thigh.
41. Stifle.
42. Lower thigh.
43. Hock.
44. Chestnut.

The description from the hock downwards are the same as in the fore-limbs.

### THE TAIL.

45. The root of the tail or dock.
46. The hair of the tail.

REMARK.—The plate shows a bright-chestnut English thoroughbred stallion, with a star on the forehead, a white sock on the off fore-leg, a white heel on near fore-leg, and a white stocking on the near hind-leg.



# INDEX.

<b>FORMATION—</b>			
Signal for .. .. .	page 8		
to dismount for .. .. .	S. 147		
adjusting backsight .. .. .	S. 82		
mutant, post of .. .. .	S. 301 (c)		
advance arms .. .. .	S. 110		
advance in review order .. .. .	S. 311		
advance, signal for .. .. .	page 9		
advanced guard—			
Commander .. .. .	S. 329		
distance from main body .. .. .	S. 330		
strength of .. .. .	S. 328		
to a force advancing .. .. .	S. 330		
to a force retreating .. .. .	S. 331		
to fall off .. .. .	S. 337		
in horsemanship .. .. .	S. 102		
to .. .. .	S. 82		
giving instruction, general			
rules .. .. .	S. 79		
giving, instruction in .. .. .	S. 80		
alignment, definition of .. .. .	page 6		
march, signal for .. .. .	page 9		
arms, cleaning and care of .. .. .	S. 63		
assembling .. .. .	S. 141		
back—			
duties of leaders in .. .. .	S. 138		
duties of rank and file in .. .. .	S. 139		
duties of skirmishers in .. .. .	S. 139		
position of leaders in .. .. .	S. 137		
practice .. .. .	S. 136		
reinforcing .. .. .	S. 140		
relieving .. .. .	S. 143		
retiring .. .. .	S. 142		
attention—			
from stand at ease with arms .. .. .	S. 32		
keeping troops at .. .. .	S. 1		
position of—			
dismounted .. .. .	S. 2		
mounted .. .. .	S. 110		
standing to horse .. .. .	S. 104		
signal for .. .. .	page 8		
ends of barrel, definition of .. .. .	S. 64		
<b>BACKSIGHT, to adjust .. .. .</b>	S. 82		
<b>Band, post of, in marching past .. .. .</b>	S. 304		
<b>Barrel, oily or heated, effects of .. .. .</b>	S. 74		
<b>Barrel, definition of .. .. .</b>	page 6		
<b>Bayonets—</b>			
fixing .. .. .	S. 38		
unfixing .. .. .	S. 39		
<b>Beaten zone .. .. .</b>	page 50		
<b>Bit, fitting of .. .. .</b>	S. 102		
<b>Blanket, saddle, fitting of .. .. .</b>	S. 102		
<b>Bridges, rules for crossing .. .. .</b>	S. 360		
<b>Brigade drill—</b>			
brigade movements .. .. .	S. 267		
changes of—			
direction .. .. .	S. 281		
front .. .. .	S. 287		
formation of—			
brigade .. .. .	S. 267		
col. of masses from—			
line of masses .. .. .	S. 276 (b)		
line of sqdn. cols. .. .. .	S. 277 (c)		
bde. mass .. .. .	S. 275 (a)		
line of masses from—			
bde. mass .. .. .	S. 272 (a)		
col. of masses .. .. .	S. 273 (b)		
line of sqdn. cols. .. .. .	S. 274 (c)		
line of sqdn. cols. from—			
bde. mass .. .. .	S. 278 (a)		
col. of masses .. .. .	S. 280 (c)		
line of masses .. .. .	S. 279 (b)		
mass from—			
col. of masses .. .. .	S. 270 (b)		
line of masses .. .. .	S. 269 (a)		
line of sqdn. cols. .. .. .	S. 271 (c)		
general instructions .. .. .	S. 264		
post of officers .. .. .	S. 265		
<b>Brigade—</b>			
inspection of .. .. .	S. 312		
mass, definition of .. .. .	page 7		
<b>Bullet, forces acting on .. .. .</b>	S. 66		
<b>CADENCE .. .. .</b>	S. 7		
<b>Care of arms .. .. .</b>	S. 63		
<b>Carry arms .. .. .</b>	S. 110		
<b>Casualties, skirmishing .. .. .</b>	S. 120		
<b>Cease fire—</b>			
signal for .. .. .	page 8		
what to do .. .. .	S. 81		
<b>Centre guide .. .. .</b>	S. 92		
<b>Challenging, sentries .. .. .</b>	S. 293		

## INDEX—continued.

- Changing arms—  
   at secure .. .. S. 48  
   at slope .. .. S. 37  
   at trail .. .. S. 42  
 Changing direction—  
   as in file .. .. S. 26  
   skirmishers .. .. S. 130  
 Changing front, definition of .. page 6  
 Changing position, definition of .. page 6  
 Changing step .. .. S. 15  
 Cleaning and care of arms .. S. 63  
 Close, signal for .. .. page 9  
 Closing, skirmishers .. .. S. 126  
 Collective fire .. .. S. 85  
 Column—  
   definition of .. .. page 6  
   close, definition of .. .. page 6  
   of half squadrons—  
     advancing in .. .. S. 173 (c)  
     from col. of sec. .. .. S. 183 (e)  
     from line .. .. S. 179 (a)  
     from squadron column .. S. 181 (c)  
     changing direction .. S. 196 (e)  
   of masses, definition of .. page 6  
 Commander of advanced guard .. S. 129  
 Commands, words of .. .. page 11  
 Compliments—  
   paying with arms .. .. S. 56  
   sentries paying .. .. S. 294  
 Concentrated fire .. .. S. 184  
 Cover, skirmishers taking .. .. S. 133  
 Covering, definition of .. .. page 6  
 Crossing—  
   bridges .. .. S. 360  
   rivers .. .. S. 360  
 Culminating point of bullet .. S. 64  
 Curb chain, fitting of .. .. S. 102  
  
**DANGEROUS SPACE—**  
   definition of .. .. S. 64  
   when increased or decreased .. S. 71  
 Decreasing front—  
   from half sections to single  
   file .. .. S. 95 (c)  
   from sections to half sections .. S. 94 (b)  
   from troop to sections .. .. S. 93 (a)  
 Defence practice .. .. S. 145  
 Definitions .. .. page 6  
 Deployment, definition of .. .. page 6  
  
 Depth, definition of .. .. page  
 Detached post .. .. S. 3  
 Detraining horses .. .. S. 3  
 Diagonal march .. .. S. 2  
 Diagrams—  
   advanced guard .. .. S. 3  
   outpost .. .. page 2  
 Diamond formation .. .. S. 3  
 Direction—  
   changes of, brigade drill .. S. 2  
   changing—  
     in column of troops or  
     sections .. .. S. 252  
     in echelon of squadron  
     columns .. .. S. 251  
     line of squadron column .. S. 249  
     in squadron column .. S. 105  
     when marching to a flank  
     in squadron column .. S. 198  
 Directing unit, definition of .. page  
 Discipline, fire .. .. S. 1  
 Dismissing—  
   a squad .. .. S. 2  
   with arms .. .. S. 5  
 Dismount, signal for .. .. page  
 Dismounted duty—  
   action .. .. S. 1  
   discipline, fire .. .. S. 1  
   dismounting to a flank .. S. 1  
   general instructions .. .. S. 1  
   horses, how handed over .. S. 1  
   led horses manœuvred .. S. 1  
   method of carrying out with  
   linked horses .. .. S. 1  
   method of carrying out with  
   Nos. 3 in charge .. .. S. 1  
   to mount from .. .. S. 1  
 Dismounting, instruction for .. S. 1  
 Dismounting to a flank .. .. S. 1  
 Distance—  
   definition of .. .. page  
   judging .. .. S. 8  
 Distances, table of .. .. page  
 Divisional cavalry .. .. S. 3  
 Double—  
   echelon .. .. S. 2  
   march .. .. S. 1  
   signal for .. .. page  
 Drawing swords—  
   mounted .. .. S. 60  
   on foot .. .. S. 59



## INDEX—continued.

dressing—			Extending, skirmishers—		
by a flank .. ..	S. 20		from column of sections .. ..	S. 127	
definition of .. ..	page 6		from line .. ..	S. 125	
squadron mounted .. ..	S. 116		Extreme range .. ..	S. 75	
troop mounted .. ..	S. 158				
with intervals .. ..	S. 4				
rift, explanation of .. ..	S. 78				
roll—					
brigade .. ..	S. 264		FAULTS—		
mounted, direction and pace .. ..	S. 157		in aiming .. ..	S. 80	
regimental .. ..	S. 213		File—		
silent principles of .. ..	page 8		changing direction in .. ..	S. 26	
squad .. ..	S. 1		marching as in .. ..	S. 25	
" in single rank .. ..	page 24		Fire—		
" with intervals .. ..	S. 19		advanced exercises .. ..	S. 87	
squadron .. ..	S. 165		collective .. ..	S. 85	
troop—			control of .. ..	S. 85	
dismounted .. ..	S. 90		discipline .. ..	S. 135	
mounted .. ..	S. 154		effect, of skirmishers .. ..	S. 134	
			enfilade .. ..	S. 134	
			ground in relation to .. ..	S. 78	
			line of, definition .. ..	S. 64	
			oblique .. ..	S. 134	
			observation of .. ..	S. 89	
			preliminary exercises .. ..	S. 86	
			rifle, theory of .. ..	S. 64	
			unit .. ..	S. 134	
BASE—			Firing—		
sit at .. ..	S. 104		general rules for .. ..	S. 81	
springs, how to .. ..	S. 53		knocelling .. ..	S. 84	
stand at .. ..	S. 3		line, serrefiles in .. ..	S. 134	
stand at, with horses .. ..	S. 104		withdrawing men .. ..	S. 142	
chelon—			lying .. ..	S. 83	
definition of .. ..	page 7		sitting .. ..	S. 84	
regt. advancing in, from line .. ..	S. 243 (a)		standing .. ..	S. 82	
regt. advancing in, from line .. ..	S. 245 (c)		First catch, definition of .. ..	S. 64	
of sqdn. cols. .. ..	S. 245 (c)		First graze, definition of .. ..	S. 38	
squadron advancing in, from .. ..	S. 204		Fixing bayonets .. ..	S. 38	
line .. ..	S. 204		Flags of truce .. ..	S. 340	
squadron forming line from .. ..	S. 206		Flank—		
effect of fire .. ..	S. 134		definition of .. ..	page 7	
elevation .. ..	S. 69		dismounting to a .. ..	S. 149	
enemy—			dressing by .. ..	S. 22	
in sight in large numbers, .. ..	S. 9		guard .. ..	S. 332	
signal for .. ..	S. 9		marching to in—		
in sight in small numbers, .. ..	S. 9		half-sections .. ..	S. 103 (b)	
signal for .. ..	S. 9		sections .. ..	S. 99 (a)	
not in sight, signal for .. ..	page 10		single file .. ..	S. 101 (c)	
enfilade fire .. ..	S. 134		movements to by troop .. ..	S. 163 (a)	
entraining horses .. ..	S. 358		mounted .. ..	S. 200 (a)	
scouts, general instructions .. ..	S. 296		squadron marching to .. ..	S. 200 (a)	
estimation of range by—			Forces acting on the bullet .. ..	S. 66	
eye .. ..	S. 88				
observation of fire .. ..	S. 89				
examine arms .. ..	S. 52				
extend, signal for .. ..	page 9				

## INDEX—continued.

- Formation—**  
 for review .. S. 306  
 of the brigade for review .. S. 312  
 of the regiment for review .. S. 306  
 of the squad .. S. 19  
 of the squadron .. S. 168  
 of the troop .. S. 91  
**Forming squad** .. S. 27  
**Forward, signal for** .. page 9  
**Front—**  
 change of, definition .. page 7  
 decreasing from—  
   half-sections to single file .. S. 95 (c)  
   sections to half-sections .. S. 94 (b)  
   troop to sections .. S. 93 (a)  
 definition of .. page 7  
 increasing from—  
   half-sections to sections .. S. 97 (b)  
   sections to troop .. S. 98 (c)  
   single file to half-sections .. S. 96 (a)  
**Frontage, definition of** .. page 7  
  
**GALLOP, signal for** .. page 10  
**Girth, fitting of** .. S. 102  
**Ground in relation to fire** .. S. 78  
**Grounding arms** .. S. 50  
**Grouping of bullets** .. S. 78  
**Guards—**  
   general instructions .. S. 289  
   relieving and posting .. S. 291  
   turning out at night .. S. 289  
  
**HALT—**  
   signal for .. page 10  
**Head of column change direction, signal for** .. page 10  
**Head-rope, fitting of** .. S. 102  
**Head-stall, fitting of** .. S. 102  
**Horse call, signal for** .. page 10  
**Horse guard** .. S. 147  
**Horses—**  
   how handed over .. S. 148  
   in dismounted duty brought to men .. S. 150  
   in front of .. S. 105  
   leading dismounted .. S. 105  
   linked .. S. 147  
   length, definition of .. page 7  
   rolling .. S. 117  
   swimming .. S. 112  
   teaching to stand still .. S. 114  
  
**Horses—continued.**  
   watering .. page  
   weight off the back .. S. 1  
   width, definition of .. page  
  
**INCLINE, signal for** .. page  
**Inclining—**  
   for short distances only .. S. 1  
   skirmishers .. S. 1  
**Incomplete section** .. page  
**Increasing front, from—**  
   half-sections to sections .. S. 97  
   sections to troop .. S. 98  
   single file to half-sections .. S. 96  
**Independent cavalry** .. S. 3  
**Information—**  
   general rules .. S. 3  
   method of gaining .. S. 3  
   reports, details for .. S. 3  
   reports, how made .. S. 3  
   signs affording .. S. 3  
**Inspection of—**  
   arms .. S. 5  
   regiment .. S. 3  
**Instruction of squad, principles of** .. S.  
**Intercommunication** .. S. 3  
**Interval—**  
   definition of .. page  
   in skirmishing, how regulated .. S. 1  
**Intervals—**  
   table of .. page  
   to drill with .. S. 1  
  
**JUDGING DISTANCE** .. S. 8  
**Jump, explanation of** .. S. 7  
  
**KEY to plates** .. page  
**Kneeling position, for firing** .. S. 8  
  
**LANCE exercise** .. Appx.  
**Leaders changing** .. page  
**Leaders, position of skirmishing** .. S. 1  
**Leading the horse—**  
   dismounted .. S. 1  
   mounted .. S. 1  
**Led horses, drill and manœuvre of** .. S. 1  
**Length of pace** .. S.  
**Lie down, signal for** .. page  
**Light, effect of in aiming** .. S. 7

## INDEX—continued.

definition of .. .. .	page 7	Marching—continued.	
of column of half squadrons	S. 25	position in .. .. .	S. 3
formation of from		reliefs .. .. .	S. 292
col. of squadrons .. .. .	S. 226 (d)	rules to be observed .. .. .	S. 357
col. of troops .. .. .	S. 225 (c)	special points for .. .. .	S. 355
line of squadron columns	S. 223 (a)	with arms .. .. .	S. 57
mass .. .. .	S. 224 (b)	Marking time .. .. .	S. 13
squadron column .. .. .	S. 184 (a)	Mass—	
from squadron column, signal		brigade—	
for .. .. .	page 10	definition of .. .. .	page 7
oblique, formation of .. .. .	S. 189	formation of from—	
of fire, definition of .. .. .	S. 64	col. of masses .. .. .	S. 270 (b)
of masses, definition of .. .. .	page 7	line of masses .. .. .	S. 269 (a)
of observation .. .. .	S. 310	line of sqdn. columns .. .. .	S. 271 (c)
of resistance .. .. .	S. 340	definition of .. .. .	page 7
of sight, definition of .. .. .	S. 64	formation of from—	
of squadron columns, forma-		col. of squadrons .. .. .	S. 233 (c)
tion of from—		col. of troops .. .. .	S. 232 (b)
brigade mass .. .. .	S. 273 (a)	from line .. .. .	S. 234 (d)
col. of sqdns. .. .. .	S. 229 (c)	line of sqdn. cols. .. .. .	S. 231 (a)
col. of troops .. .. .	S. 228 (b)	Masses, column of, definition	page 6
line .. .. .	S. 230 (d)	Mount—	
mass .. .. .	S. 227 (a)	after action .. .. .	S. 150
squad, wheeling in .. .. .	S. 24	signal for .. .. .	page 10
squadron never wheeled in	S. 194 (a)	Mounted drill, principles of .. .. .	S. 154
unbaked horses .. .. .	S. 147	Mounted piquets and sentries	S. 346
ward, instructions for .. .. .	S. 82	Mounting—	
zero-range sights, to adjust	S. 82	instructions for .. .. .	S. 106
zeroing position, for firing	S. 83	with rifle .. .. .	S. 107
		Moving through rough country	S. 207
		Musketry exercises—	
		aiming instruction .. .. .	S. 80
		fire, collective .. .. .	S. 85
		firing—	
		lying position .. .. .	S. 83
		kneeling position .. .. .	S. 84
		sitting .. .. .	S. 84
		standing .. .. .	S. 82
		Muzzle velocity, table of .. .. .	S. 68
		NO ENEMY in sight, signal for	page 10
		Nose band, fitting of .. .. .	S. 102
		Numnah, fitting of .. .. .	S. 102
		OBLIQUE—	
		fire .. .. .	S. 134
		formations .. .. .	S. 255 (a)
		Observation—	
		line of .. .. .	S. 340
		Occupation of a position .. .. .	S. 158

INDEX—*continued.*

Officers—					
post of in—					
brigade drill .. .. .	S.	265			
marching past .. .. .	S.	299			
regimental drill .. .. .	S.	214			
review order .. .. .	S.	311			
squadron drill .. .. .	S.	169			
salute in marching past .. .. .	S.	308			
Olly barrel, effects of on elevation .. .. .	S.	74			
Order arms—					
from—					
examine arms .. .. .	S.	54			
slope arms .. .. .	S.	34			
trail arms .. .. .	S.	41			
position of .. .. .	S.	30			
Outposts—					
artillery with .. .. .	S.	341			
commander of .. .. .	S.	342			
composition of .. .. .	S.	341			
cossack posts .. .. .	S.	346			
definition of terms .. .. .	S.	339			
detached posts .. .. .	S.	347			
distribution of .. .. .	S.	343			
duties of .. .. .	S.	338			
duties of commander .. .. .	S.	342			
flags of truce .. .. .	S.	349			
general rules for .. .. .	S.	338			
machine guns with .. .. .	S.	341			
mounted piquets and sentries .. .. .	S.	346			
orders for .. .. .	S.	342			
patrols reconnoitring .. .. .	S.	352			
patrols standing .. .. .	S.	353			
piquets .. .. .	S.	345			
position of the .. .. .	S.	340			
reserve the .. .. .	S.	344			
sentries .. .. .	S.	346			
supports .. .. .	S.	354			
to tell off squadron for .. .. .	S.	354			
<b>PACE AND DIRECTION—</b>					
troop drill .. .. .	S.	157			
evenness of .. .. .	S.	157			
Pace, length of .. .. .	S.	7			
Parade movements—					
advance in review order .. .. .	S.	311			
brigade, inspection of .. .. .	S.	312			
formation for review .. .. .	S.	306			
inspection or review .. .. .	S.	305			
march past at gallop .. .. .	S.	310			
Parade movements— <i>continued.</i>					
march past at trot .. .. .	S.	310			
marching past .. .. .	S.	310			
officers salute in marching past .. .. .	S.	310			
post of officers .. .. .	S.	299			
post of trumpeters and band .. .. .	S.	304			
Patrols—					
reconnoitring .. .. .	S.	352			
standing .. .. .	S.	353			
Paying compliments with arms .. .. .	S.	5			
Pitching tents .. .. .	S.	3			
Pivot—					
fixed, definition of .. .. .	page				
moving, definition of .. .. .	page				
Plates, key to .. .. .	S.				
Position—					
at attention .. .. .	S.				
in marching .. .. .	S.				
mounted .. .. .	S.	1			
occupation of .. .. .	S.	1			
Posting—					
guard .. .. .	S.	2			
sentries .. .. .	S.	2			
Posts of officers—					
brigade drill .. .. .	S.	2			
marching past .. .. .	S.	2			
regimental drill .. .. .	S.	2			
squadron drill .. .. .	S.	1			
Present arms from slope .. .. .	S.	3			
Pressing the trigger .. .. .	page				
Protection—					
advanced guard—					
duties of .. .. .	S.	3			
duties of commander .. .. .	S.	3			
distance from main body .. .. .	S.	3			
in a retreat .. .. .	S.	3			
strength and composition of .. .. .	S.	3			
to tell off squadron as .. .. .	S.	3			
cossack posts .. .. .	S.	3			
detached posts .. .. .	S.	3			
flank guard .. .. .	S.	3			
general rules .. .. .	S.	3			
main guard .. .. .	S.	3			
on the march .. .. .	S.	3			
piquets .. .. .	S.	3			
rear guard—					
action of .. .. .	S.	3			
duties of .. .. .	S.	3			
formation of .. .. .	S.	3			
to a force advancing .. .. .	S.	3			



INDEX—*continued.*

Returning swords—					
mounted .. .. .	page 41				
on foot .. .. .	page 39				
Review—					
of brigade .. .. .	S. 312				
of regiment .. .. .	S. 306				
Riding instruction—					
dismounting .. .. .	S. 108				
dismounting with rifle .. .. .	S. 109				
general remarks .. .. .	S. 102				
leading and standing to the horse .. .. .	S. 105				
mounting .. .. .	S. 106				
mounting with rifle .. .. .	S. 107				
position mounted .. .. .	S. 110				
reins, method of holding .. .. .	S. 106				
saluting .. .. .	S. 111				
Rifle, cleaning and care of .. .. .	S. 63				
Rifle exercises—					
attention from stand at ease .. .. .	S. 32				
changing arms at secure .. .. .	S. 48				
changing arms at slope .. .. .	S. 37				
changing arms at trail .. .. .	S. 42				
dismissing with arms .. .. .	S. 55				
ease springs .. .. .	S. 53				
fix bayonets .. .. .	S. 38				
general rules .. .. .	S. 29				
grounding arms .. .. .	S. 50				
inspecting arms .. .. .	S. 52				
marching with arms .. .. .	S. 57				
order arms .. .. .	S. 30				
order arms from examine .. .. .	S. 54				
order arms from slope .. .. .	S. 34				
order arms from trail .. .. .	S. 41				
paying compliments .. .. .	S. 56				
present arms from slope .. .. .	S. 35				
secure arms from slope .. .. .	S. 46				
short trail .. .. .	S. 45				
slope arms from order .. .. .	S. 33				
slope arms from present .. .. .	S. 36				
slope arms from secure .. .. .	S. 47				
slope arms from trail .. .. .	S. 43				
slinging arms .. .. .	S. 49				
stand at ease .. .. .	S. 31				
taking up arms .. .. .	S. 51				
trail arms from the order .. .. .	S. 40				
trail from the slope .. .. .	S. 44				
unfix bayonets .. .. .	S. 39				
Rifle fire, theory of .. .. .	S. 64				
Rifles, sighting of .. .. .	S. 70				
Rifling, definition and value of .. .. .	S. 65				
Ringing horses .. .. .	S.				
Rise, signal for .. .. .	page				
Rivers, crossing .. .. .	S.				
Rolling, horses .. .. .	S.				
Rough country, moving through .. .. .	S.				
Routine, stable .. .. .	page				
SADDLE blanket, fitting of .. .. .	S.				
Saddle, fitting of .. .. .	S.				
Saddlery .. .. .	page				
Saluting—					
marching past .. .. .	S.				
mounted .. .. .	S.				
on foot, with arms .. .. .	S.				
on foot, without arms .. .. .	S.				
with sword .. .. .	S.				
Sea, transport by .. .. .	S.				
Section, definition of .. .. .	pa				
Sections—					
about, signal for .. .. .	page				
right or left, signal for .. .. .	page				
Sentries—					
challenging .. .. .	S.				
general instructions .. .. .	S.				
paying compliments .. .. .	S.				
relieving and posting .. .. .	S.				
Serrefiles—					
definition of .. .. .	pa				
in firing line .. .. .	S.				
posts of .. .. .	S.				
Shell formation .. .. .	S.				
Short trail arms .. .. .	S.				
Side step .. .. .	S.				
Sight—					
line of .. .. .	S.				
long-range, to adjust .. .. .	pag				
Sighting of rifle .. .. .	pag				
Signals .. .. .	pa				
Silent drill, principles of .. .. .	pa				
Sit at ease .. .. .	S.				
Sit at ease, signal for .. .. .	pa				
Sitting position for firing .. .. .	S.				
Skirmishers—					
assembling .. .. .	S.				
changing direction .. .. .	S.				
cover .. .. .	S.				
defence practice .. .. .	S.				
duties of .. .. .	S.				
extending from col. of sections .. .. .	S.				
extending from line .. .. .	S.				

## INDEX—continued.

marshers—continued.				
attending to a flank .. ..	S. 128			
the discipline .. ..	S. 135			
the effect of .. ..	S. 134			
inclining .. ..	S. 129			
interval—				
increased or decreased .. ..	S. 132			
may vary .. ..	S. 132			
moving at the double .. ..	S. 120			
moving at the trail .. ..	S. 120			
position, occupation of .. ..	S. 153			
rolling .. ..	S. 144			
enforcing .. ..	S. 140			
believing .. ..	S. 143			
reporting and passing orders ..	S. 132			
tiring .. ..	S. 142			
tiring, how carried out .. ..	S. 142			
marshing—				
casualties .. ..	S. 120			
moving from line .. ..	S. 126			
course of instruction .. ..	S. 122			
never, making use of .. ..	S. 133			
general rules for .. ..	S. 120			
normal extension .. ..	S. 132			
tactical .. ..	S. 132			
preliminary training .. ..	S. 123			
believing .. ..	S. 143			
tiring .. ..	S. 142			
special points for instruction ..	S. 121			
changing arms .. ..	S. 49			
changing arms, mounted .. ..	S. 110			
the arms—				
from order .. ..	S. 33			
from present .. ..	S. 86			
from secure .. ..	S. 47			
at fire .. ..	S. 85			
at march .. ..	S. 7			
at backs .. ..	page 86			
at drums, whistle .. ..	page 8			
at ease—				
dangerous .. ..	S. 64			
dangerous when increased and ..				
decreased .. ..	S. 71			
orders, to ease .. ..	S. 53			
at ease—				
at dismissing .. ..	S. 28			
at drill, general rules .. ..	S. 1			
at drill, in single rank .. ..	S. 19			
at forming .. ..	S. 27			
at drums, formation of .. ..	S. 19			
Squadron column—				
definition of .. ..	page 8			
from line, signal for .. ..	page 10			
Squadron—				
definition of .. ..	page 8			
formation of .. ..	S. 168			
Squadron drill—				
dressing and covering .. ..	S. 166			
direction .. ..	S. 167			
direction, change of—				
in col. of half sqdns. .. ..	S. 196 (c)			
in line .. ..	S. 194 (a)			
in marching to a flank .. ..	S. 198 (e)			
in squadron column .. ..	S. 195 (b)			
flank, marching to—				
from col. of half sqdns. .. ..	S. 202 (c)			
from line .. ..	S. 200 (a)			
from sqdn. col. .. ..	S. 201 (b)			
formation of squadron .. ..				
column—				
from col. of sections .. ..	S. 178 (e)			
from col. of half sqdns. .. ..	S. 176 (c)			
from line .. ..	S. 174 (a)			
formation of echelon from line ..	S. 204			
formation of col. of half .. ..				
sqdns.—				
from squadron column .. ..	S. 181 (c)			
from col. of sections .. ..	S. 183 (e)			
from line .. ..	S. 179 (a)			
formation of line—				
from col. of sections .. ..	S. 188 (e)			
from echelon .. ..	S. 206			
from col. of half sqdns. .. ..	S. 186 (c)			
marching—				
in squadron column .. ..	S. 172 (b)			
in col. of half sqdns. .. ..	S. 178 (c)			
in line .. ..	S. 171 (a)			
notes on .. ..	S. 165			
officers and N.C.O.'s (post of) ..	S. 169			
proving the squadron .. ..	S. 170			
rough country, moving .. ..				
through .. ..	S. 207			
Stable duties .. ..	page 84			
Stand at ease—				
position of .. ..	S. 3			
signal for .. ..	S. 8			
with horses .. ..	S. 104			
with rifle .. ..	S. 31			
with sword .. ..	S. 59 (a)			
Standing patrols .. ..	S. 353			
Stratagical reconnaissance .. ..	S. 315			

## INDEX—continued.

Step—					
changing..	..	..	S. 15		
side ..	..	..	S. 17		
Stepping—					
back ..	..	..	S. 14		
out ..	..	..	S. 10		
short ..	..	..	S. 11		
Striking tents	..	..	S. 361		
Surcingle, fitting of	..	..	S. 102		
Swimming the horse	..	..	S. 112		
Sword exercise	..	..	Appendix I.		
TACTICAL employment of					
L.H. . . .	..	..	S. 313		
Factical reconaissance	..	..	S. 316		
Taking up arms	..	..	S. 51		
Tents, pitching and striking	..	..	S. 361		
Theory of rifle fire	..	..	S. 64		
Throat lash, fitting of	..	..	S. 102		
Time—					
in marching	..	..	S. 7		
marking ..	..	..	S. 13		
Traffic through outposts	..	..	S. 348		
Trail arms ..	..	..	S. 40		
Trajectory table	..	..	S. 67		
Transmission of information	..	..	S. 322		
Transport—					
by rail ..	..	..	S. 358		
by sea ..	..	..	S. 359		
Trigger, to press	..	..	S. 82		
Troop—					
definition of	..	..	page 8		
dressing of	..	..	S. 158		
drill—					
decreasing front	..	..	page 72		
increasing front..	..	..	page 73		
mounted	..	..	page 104		
pace and direction	..	..	S. 157		
preliminary remarks	..	..	S. 90		
formation of on foot	..	..	S. 91		
Troop—continued.					
leaders always in front	..	..	S.		
leader's responsibility	..	..	S.		
marching in line	..	..	S.		
movements to a flank	..	..	S.		
movements to a flank	..	..	S.		
mounted	..	..	S.		
proving and telling off	..	..	S.		
proving when mounted	..	..	S.		
wheeling on a fixed pivot	..	..	S.		
wheeling on a moving pivot	..	..	S.		
right, or left, wheel signal for	pag				
Trot, signal for	..	..	pa		
Trumpeters, position in marching	..	..	S. 30		
ing past	..	..	S. 30		
Turnings—					
by numbers	..	..	S.		
judging the time	..	..	S.		
on the march	..	..	S.		
UNFIXING bayonets	..	..	S.		
Unload, rifle	..	..	S.		
Unsaddling	..	..	S.		
Unslng arms, mounted	..	..	S.		
VANGUARD	..	..	S.		
Velocity of bullet	..	..	S.		
WALK, signal for	..	..	pag		
Walking, mounted troops	..	..	S.		
Watering horses	..	..	pag		
Wheeling—					
definition of	..	..	pa		
in line	..	..	S.		
troop, on a fixed pivot	..	..	S.		
troop, on a moving pivot	..	..	S.		
Whistle sounds	..	..	pa		
Wind, effects of in shooting	..	..	S.		
Withdrawing men from firing	..	..	S.		
line	..	..	S.		
Words of command	..	..	pag		